

# **The pkgsrc guide**

## **Documentation on the NetBSD packages system**

(2025/04/17)

**Alistair Crooks**

`agc@NetBSD.org`

**Hubert Feyrer**

`hubertf@NetBSD.org`

**The pkgsrc Developers**

## **The pkgsrc guide: Documentation on the NetBSD packages system**

by Alistair Crooks, Hubert Feyrer, The pkgsrc Developers

Published 2025/04/17 22:00:11

Copyright © 1994-2025 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc

pkgsrc is a centralized package management system for Unix-like operating systems. This guide provides information for users and developers of pkgsrc. It covers installation of binary and source packages, creation of binary and source packages and a high-level overview about the infrastructure.

# Table of Contents

<b>1. What is pkgsrc?</b> .....	<b>1</b>
1.1. Introduction .....	1
1.1.1. Why pkgsrc?.....	1
1.1.2. Supported platforms .....	2
1.2. Overview .....	3
1.3. Terminology .....	4
1.3.1. Roles involved in pkgsrc.....	4
1.4. Typography .....	5
<b>I. The pkgsrc user's guide</b> .....	<b>1</b>
2. Getting help.....	2
3. Where to get pkgsrc and how to keep it up-to-date.....	3
3.1. Getting pkgsrc for the first time.....	3
3.1.1. As tar archive .....	3
3.1.2. Via anonymous CVS .....	4
3.2. Keeping pkgsrc up-to-date.....	4
3.2.1. Via tar files .....	5
3.2.2. Via CVS .....	5
3.2.2.1. Switching between different pkgsrc branches.....	5
3.2.2.2. What happens to my changes when updating?.....	5
4. Using pkgsrc on systems other than NetBSD .....	6
4.1. Binary distribution.....	6
4.2. Bootstrapping pkgsrc.....	6
5. Using pkgsrc .....	7
5.1. Using binary packages.....	7
5.1.1. Finding binary packages .....	7
5.1.2. Installing binary packages.....	7
5.1.3. Updating packages .....	8
5.1.4. Deinstalling packages .....	8
5.1.5. Getting information about installed packages.....	8
5.1.6. Checking for security vulnerabilities in installed packages.....	8
5.1.7. Finding if newer versions of your installed packages are in pkgsrc .....	9
5.1.8. Other administrative functions.....	10
5.2. Building packages from source .....	10
5.2.1. Requirements .....	10
5.2.2. Fetching distfiles .....	10
5.2.3. How to build and install .....	11
6. Configuring pkgsrc.....	13
6.1. General configuration .....	13
6.2. Variables affecting the build process .....	13
6.3. Preferences for native or pkgsrc software .....	14
6.4. Variables affecting the installation process .....	15
6.5. Selecting and configuring the compiler.....	15
6.5.1. Selecting the compiler.....	16
6.5.2. Additional flags to the compiler (CFLAGS).....	16
6.5.3. Additional flags to the linker (LDFLAGS).....	17

6.6. Developer/advanced settings .....	17
6.7. Selecting Build Options.....	17
7. Creating binary packages .....	19
7.1. Building a single binary package .....	19
7.2. Settings for creation of binary packages .....	19
8. Creating binary packages for everything in pkgsrc (bulk builds) .....	20
8.1. Preparations .....	20
8.2. Running a bulk build .....	20
8.2.1. Configuration .....	20
8.3. Requirements of a full bulk build .....	22
8.4. Bulk build variants.....	22
8.4.1. Detect unknown configure options .....	22
8.4.2. Detect classes of bugs by forcing compiler warnings.....	22
8.4.3. Force compiler options only in the build phase .....	23
8.4.4. Use custom directories.....	24
8.4.5. Turn warnings into errors.....	24
8.4.6. Reject packages for which pkglint reports errors .....	25
8.4.7. Reject packages that contain forbidden strings.....	25
8.4.8. Reject packages whose self-test fails.....	25
8.4.9. Reject packages that use undefined shell variables.....	25
8.4.10. Turn off verbose logging.....	26
8.5. Creating a multiple CD-ROM packages collection .....	26
8.5.1. Example of cdpack.....	26
9. Directory layout of the installed files .....	28
9.1. File system layout in $\${LOCALBASE}$ .....	28
9.2. File system layout in $\${VARBASE}$ .....	30
10. Frequently Asked Questions .....	31
10.1. Are there any mailing lists for pkg-related discussion? .....	31
10.2. Utilities for package management (pkgtools).....	31
10.3. How to use pkgsrc as non-root .....	32
10.4. How to resume transfers when fetching distfiles? .....	33
10.5. How can I install/use modular X.org from pkgsrc?.....	33
10.6. How to fetch files from behind a firewall .....	33
10.7. How to fetch files from HTTPS sites.....	33
10.8. How do I tell <b>make fetch</b> to do passive FTP?.....	34
10.9. How to fetch all distfiles at once .....	34
10.10. What does “Don’t know how to make /usr/share/tmac/tmac.andoc” mean?.....	34
10.11. What does “Could not find bsd.own.mk” mean?.....	35
10.12. Using ‘sudo’ or ‘priv’ with pkgsrc .....	35
10.13. How do I change the location of configuration files?.....	35
10.14. Automated security checks.....	36
10.15. Why do some packages ignore my CFLAGS? .....	36
10.16. A package does not build. What shall I do? .....	37
10.17. What does “Makefile appears to contain unresolved cvs/rcs/??? merge conflicts” mean? .....	37

<b>II. The pkgsrc developer's guide .....</b>	<b>38</b>
11. Getting help.....	39
12. Package components - files, directories and contents .....	40
12.1. Makefile.....	40
12.2. distinfo.....	42
12.3. patches/*.....	42
12.3.1. Structure of a single patch file .....	42
12.3.2. Creating patch files .....	43
12.3.3. Sources where the patch files come from .....	43
12.3.4. Patching guidelines .....	44
12.3.5. Feedback to the author.....	44
12.4. Other mandatory files .....	45
12.5. Optional files .....	45
12.5.1. Files affecting the binary package .....	45
12.5.2. Files affecting the build process.....	46
12.5.3. Files affecting nothing at all .....	47
12.6. work* .....	47
12.7. files/* .....	47
13. The build process .....	49
13.1. Introduction .....	49
13.2. Program location .....	49
13.3. Directories used during the build process.....	50
13.4. Running a phase .....	50
13.5. The <i>fetch</i> phase .....	50
13.5.1. What to fetch and where to get it from .....	51
13.5.2. How are the files fetched?.....	52
13.6. The <i>checksum</i> phase .....	52
13.7. The <i>extract</i> phase.....	53
13.8. The <i>patch</i> phase .....	53
13.9. The <i>tools</i> phase .....	53
13.10. The <i>wrapper</i> phase .....	54
13.11. The <i>configure</i> phase.....	54
13.12. The <i>build</i> phase.....	55
13.13. The <i>test</i> phase .....	55
13.14. The <i>install</i> phase.....	55
13.15. The <i>package</i> phase.....	57
13.16. Cleaning up.....	57
13.17. Other helpful targets .....	57
14. Creating a new pkgsrc package from scratch.....	63
14.1. Common types of packages.....	64
14.1.1. Python modules and programs.....	65
14.1.2. R packages .....	65
14.1.3. TeXlive packages .....	65
14.2. Examples .....	66
14.2.1. How the www/nvu package came into pkgsrc .....	66
14.2.1.1. The initial package .....	66
14.2.1.2. Fixing all kinds of problems to make the package work.....	67
14.2.1.3. Installing the package.....	69

15. Programming in Makefiles.....	70
15.1. Caveats.....	70
15.2. Makefile variables .....	70
15.2.1. Naming conventions.....	71
15.3. Code snippets.....	71
15.3.1. Adding things to a list.....	71
15.3.2. Echoing a string exactly as-is .....	71
15.3.3. Passing CFLAGS to GNU configure scripts .....	72
15.3.4. Handling possibly empty variables .....	72
15.3.5. Testing yes/no variables in conditions .....	73
16. Options handling .....	74
16.1. Global default options .....	74
16.2. Converting packages to use <code>bsd.options.mk</code> .....	74
16.3. Option Names.....	76
16.4. Determining the options of dependencies .....	77
17. Tools needed for building or running.....	78
17.1. Tools for <code>pkgsrc</code> builds .....	78
17.2. Tools needed by packages .....	78
17.3. Tools provided by platforms.....	78
18. Buildlink methodology .....	80
18.1. Converting packages to use <code>buildlink3</code> .....	80
18.2. Writing <code>buildlink3.mk</code> files.....	81
18.2.1. Anatomy of a <code>buildlink3.mk</code> file.....	81
18.2.2. Updating <code>BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg</code> and <code>BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg</code> in <code>buildlink3.mk</code> files.....	83
18.3. Writing <code>builtin.mk</code> files .....	84
18.3.1. Anatomy of a <code>builtin.mk</code> file.....	84
19. PLIST issues .....	86
19.1. RCS ID .....	86
19.2. Semi-automatic PLIST generation .....	86
19.3. Tweaking output of <b>make print-PLIST</b> .....	86
19.4. Variable substitution in PLIST .....	86
19.5. Man page compression .....	87
19.6. Changing PLIST source with <code>PLIST_SRC</code> .....	88
19.7. Platform-specific and differing PLISTs.....	88
19.8. Build-specific PLISTs .....	88
19.9. Sharing directories between packages.....	88
20. The <code>pkginstall</code> framework .....	90
20.1. Files and directories outside the installation prefix .....	90
20.1.1. Directory manipulation .....	90
20.1.2. File manipulation .....	91
20.2. Configuration files .....	91
20.2.1. How <code>PKG_SYSCONFDIR</code> is set .....	92
20.2.2. Telling the software where configuration files are .....	93
20.2.3. Patching installation.....	93
20.2.4. Declaring configuration files.....	93
20.2.5. Disabling handling of configuration files.....	94
20.3. System startup scripts.....	94

20.3.1. Disabling handling of system startup scripts .....	94
20.4. System users and groups .....	95
20.5. System shells .....	95
20.5.1. Disabling shell registration .....	95
20.6. Fonts .....	95
20.6.1. Disabling automatic update of the fonts databases .....	96
21. Making your package work.....	97
21.1. General operation .....	97
21.1.1. How to pull in user-settable variables from <code>mk.conf</code> .....	97
21.1.2. User interaction.....	97
21.1.3. Handling licenses .....	98
21.1.3.1. Adding a package with a new license .....	99
21.1.3.2. Change to the license.....	99
21.1.4. Restricted packages.....	99
21.1.5. Handling dependencies .....	100
21.1.6. Handling conflicts with other packages .....	101
21.1.7. Packages that cannot or should not be built.....	102
21.1.8. Packages which should not be deleted, once installed.....	102
21.1.9. Handling packages with security problems .....	103
21.1.10. How to handle incrementing versions when fixing an existing package .....	103
21.1.11. Substituting variable text in the package files (the SUBST framework) .....	104
21.1.11.1. Choosing the time where the substitutions happen .....	105
21.1.11.2. Choosing the files where the substitutions happen.....	106
21.1.11.3. Choosing what to substitute .....	107
21.1.11.4. Other SUBST variables .....	107
21.2. The <i>fetch</i> phase .....	107
21.2.1. Packages whose distfiles aren't available for plain downloading .....	108
21.2.2. How to handle modified distfiles with the 'old' name .....	108
21.2.3. Packages hosted on github.com .....	108
21.2.3.1. Fetch based on a tagged release .....	108
21.2.3.2. Fetch based on a specific commit before the first release .....	109
21.2.3.3. Fetch based on a specific commit after a release .....	109
21.2.3.4. Fetch based on release.....	109
21.3. The <i>configure</i> phase.....	110
21.3.1. Shared libraries - libtool.....	110
21.3.2. Using libtool on GNU packages that already support libtool .....	111
21.3.3. GNU Autoconf/Automake .....	112
21.3.4. Meson / ninja.....	112
21.3.5. Determining the endianness.....	113
21.4. Programming languages .....	113
21.4.1. C, C++, and Fortran .....	113
21.4.2. Java.....	114
21.4.3. Go.....	114
21.4.4. Rust .....	114
21.4.5. Packages containing Perl scripts.....	114
21.4.6. Packages containing shell scripts.....	115
21.4.7. Other programming languages.....	115
21.5. The <i>build</i> phase.....	115

21.5.1. Compiling C and C++ code conditionally .....	115
21.5.1.1. C preprocessor macros to identify the operating system.....	116
21.5.1.2. C preprocessor macros to identify the hardware architecture .....	116
21.5.1.3. C preprocessor macros to identify the compiler.....	117
21.5.2. How to handle compiler bugs .....	117
21.5.3. No such file or directory .....	117
21.5.3.1. Headers from other packages .....	117
21.5.3.2. Headers generated during the build.....	118
21.5.3.3. Symlinks.....	118
21.5.3.4. Stale working directories.....	119
21.5.3.5. Other possible reasons.....	119
21.5.4. Undefined reference to “...” .....	119
21.5.4.1. The SunPro compiler and inline functions .....	120
21.5.4.2. Missing atomic functions .....	120
21.5.5. Running out of memory .....	120
21.6. The <i>install</i> phase.....	120
21.6.1. Creating needed directories.....	120
21.6.2. Where to install documentation .....	121
21.6.3. Installing highscore files .....	121
21.6.4. Adding DESTDIR support to packages.....	122
21.6.5. Packages with hardcoded paths to other interpreters.....	122
21.6.6. Packages installing Perl modules.....	122
21.6.7. Packages installing pkg-config files.....	123
21.6.8. Packages installing info files.....	123
21.6.9. Packages installing man pages.....	124
21.6.10. Packages installing X11 fonts .....	124
21.6.11. Packages installing SGML or XML data.....	124
21.6.12. Packages installing extensions to the MIME database .....	125
21.6.13. Packages using intltool .....	125
21.6.14. Packages installing startup scripts .....	125
21.6.15. Packages installing TeX modules .....	125
21.6.16. Packages supporting running binaries in emulation .....	126
21.6.17. Packages installing hicolor icons .....	126
21.6.18. Packages installing desktop files.....	126
21.7. Marking packages as having problems.....	127
22. GNOME packaging and porting .....	128
22.1. Meta packages .....	128
22.2. Packaging a GNOME application .....	128
22.3. Updating GNOME to a newer version .....	130
22.4. Patching guidelines.....	131
23. Submitting and Committing.....	132
23.1. Submitting binary packages .....	132
23.2. Submitting source packages (for non-NetBSD-developers).....	132
23.3. General notes when adding, updating, or removing packages .....	132
23.4. Commit Messages .....	133
23.5. Committing: Adding a package to CVS.....	133
23.6. Updating a package to a newer version .....	134
23.7. Renaming a package in pkgsrc .....	134

23.8. Moving a package in pkgsrc .....	135
24. pkgsrc Policies .....	136
24.1. Packages for which updating is restricted .....	136
24.1.1. Limited Updates - ABI.....	136
24.1.2. Limited Updates - Bootstrap.....	136
25. Frequently Asked Questions .....	137
<b>III. The pkgsrc infrastructure internals .....</b>	<b>139</b>
26. Design of the pkgsrc infrastructure .....	140
26.1. The meaning of variable definitions .....	140
26.2. Avoiding problems before they arise .....	140
26.3. Variable evaluation .....	140
26.3.1. At load time.....	141
26.3.2. At runtime .....	141
26.4. How can variables be specified?.....	141
26.5. Designing interfaces for Makefile fragments .....	141
26.5.1. Procedures with parameters .....	142
26.5.2. Actions taken on behalf of parameters.....	142
26.6. The order in which files are loaded .....	142
26.6.1. The order in <code>bsd.prefs.mk</code> .....	142
26.6.2. The order in <code>bsd.pkg.mk</code> .....	143
27. Regression tests .....	144
27.1. Running the regression tests .....	144
27.2. Adding a new regression test.....	144
27.2.1. Overridable functions.....	144
27.2.2. Helper functions.....	145
28. Porting pkgsrc .....	146
28.1. Porting pkgsrc to a new operating system .....	146
<b>A. A simple example package: bison.....</b>	<b>147</b>
A.1. files .....	147
A.1.1. Makefile .....	147
A.1.2. DESCR .....	147
A.1.3. PLIST.....	147
A.1.4. Checking a package with pkglint.....	148
A.2. Steps for building, installing, packaging.....	148
<b>B. Security hardening.....</b>	<b>151</b>
B.1. Mechanisms.....	151
B.1.1. Enabled by default .....	151
B.1.1.1. PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY .....	151
B.1.1.2. PKGSRC_USE_SSP .....	151
B.1.1.3. PKGSRC_MKPIE.....	152
B.1.1.4. PKGSRC_USE_RELRO.....	152
B.1.2. Not enabled by default .....	152
B.1.2.1. PKGSRC_MKREPRO .....	153
B.1.2.2. PKGSRC_USE_STACK_CHECK.....	153
B.2. Caveats.....	153
B.2.1. Problems with PKGSRC_MKPIE .....	153
B.2.1.1. Packages failing to build .....	153

B.2.1.1.1. How to fix .....	153
B.2.1.2. Run-time crashes .....	154
B.2.1.3. Disabling PKGSRC_MKPIE on a per-package basis .....	154
B.2.2. Problems with PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY .....	154
B.2.2.1. Packages failing to build .....	154
B.2.2.2. Run-time crashes .....	154
B.2.2.3. Optimization is required.....	154
B.2.2.4. Disabling FORTIFY on a per-package basis.....	154
B.2.3. Problems with PKGSRC_USE_RELRO .....	154
B.2.3.1. Performance impact.....	155
B.2.3.2. Run-time crashes .....	155
B.2.3.3. Disabling RELRO on a per-package basis .....	155
B.2.4. Problems with PKGSRC_USE_SSP .....	155
B.2.4.1. Packages failing to build .....	155
B.2.4.2. Run-time crashes .....	155
B.2.4.3. Performance impact.....	156
B.2.4.4. Disabling SSP on a per-package basis .....	156
B.3. Auditing the system.....	156
B.3.1. Checking for PIE .....	156
B.3.2. Checking for partial RELRO .....	157
B.3.3. Checking for full RELRO .....	157
B.3.4. Checking for SSP.....	157
<b>C. Build logs .....</b>	<b>159</b>
C.1. Building figlet.....	159
C.2. Packaging figlet .....	160
<b>D. Directory layout of the pkgsrc FTP server .....</b>	<b>162</b>
D.1. distfiles: The distributed source files.....	162
D.2. misc: Miscellaneous things .....	162
D.3. packages: Binary packages.....	162
D.4. reports: Bulk build reports.....	163
D.5. current, stable, pkgsrc-20xxQy: source packages.....	163
<b>E. Help topics .....</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>F. Editing guidelines for the pkgsrc guide .....</b>	<b>178</b>
F.1. Make targets .....	178
F.2. Procedure.....	178

# List of Tables

1-1. Platforms supported by pkgsrc .....	2
12-1. Patching examples .....	44
22-1. PLIST handling for GNOME packages .....	129

# Chapter 1.

# *What is pkgsrc?*

---

## 1.1. Introduction

There is a lot of software freely available for Unix-based systems, which is usually available in form of the source code. Before such software can be used, it needs to be configured to the local system, compiled and installed, and this is exactly what The NetBSD Packages Collection (pkgsrc) does. pkgsrc also has some basic commands to handle binary packages, so that not every user has to build the packages for himself, which is a time-costly task.

pkgsrc currently contains several thousand packages, including:

- `www/apache24` - The Apache web server
- `www/firefox` - The Firefox web browser
- `meta-pkgs/gnome` - The GNOME Desktop Environment
- `meta-pkgs/kde4` - The K Desktop Environment

... just to name a few.

pkgsrc has built-in support for handling varying dependencies, such as pthreads and X11, and extended features such as IPv6 support on a range of platforms.

### 1.1.1. Why pkgsrc?

pkgsrc provides the following key features:

- Easy building of software from source as well as the creation and installation of binary packages. The source and latest patches are retrieved from a master or mirror download site, checksum verified, then built on your system. Support for binary-only distributions is available for both native platforms and NetBSD emulated platforms.
- All packages are installed in a consistent directory tree, including binaries, libraries, man pages and other documentation.
- Tracking of package dependencies automatically, including when performing updates, to ensure required packages are installed. The configuration files of various packages are handled automatically during updates, so local changes are preserved.
- Like NetBSD, pkgsrc is designed with portability in mind and consists of highly portable code. This allows the greatest speed of development when porting to a new platform. This portability also ensures that pkgsrc is *consistent across all platforms*.

- The installation prefix, acceptable software licenses, international encryption requirements and build-time options for a large number of packages are all set in a simple, central configuration file.
- The entire source (not including the distribution files) is freely available under a BSD license, so you may extend and adapt pkgsrc to your needs. Support for local packages and patches is available right out of the box, so you can configure it specifically for your environment.

The following principles are basic to pkgsrc:

- “It should only work if it’s right.” — That means, if a package contains bugs, it’s better to find them and to complain about them rather than to just install the package and hope that it works. There are numerous checks in pkgsrc that try to find such bugs: static analysis tools (`pkgtools/pkglint`), build-time checks (portability of shell scripts), and post-installation checks (installed files, references to shared libraries, script interpreters).
- “If it works, it should work everywhere” — Like NetBSD has been ported to many hardware architectures, pkgsrc has been ported to many operating systems. Care is taken that packages behave the same on all platforms.

### 1.1.2. Supported platforms

pkgsrc consists of both a source distribution and a binary distribution for these operating systems. After retrieving the required source or binaries, you can be up and running with pkgsrc in just minutes!

pkgsrc was derived from FreeBSD’s ports system, and initially developed for NetBSD only. Since then, pkgsrc has grown a lot, and now supports the following platforms:

**Table 1-1. Platforms supported by pkgsrc**

Platform	Date Support Added	Notes
NetBSD ( <a href="https://www.NetBSD.org/">https://www.NetBSD.org/</a> )	Aug 1997	
Solaris ( <a href="http://www.sun.com/software/solaris/">http://www.sun.com/software/solaris/</a> )	Mar 1999	README.Solaris ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
Linux ( <a href="https://www.kernel.org/">https://www.kernel.org/</a> )	Jun 1999	README.Linux ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
Darwin / Mac OS X / OS X / macOS ( <a href="https://developer.apple.com/macos/">https://developer.apple.com/macos/</a> )	Oct 2001	README.macOS ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
FreeBSD ( <a href="https://www.freebsd.org/">https://www.freebsd.org/</a> )	Nov 2002	README.FreeBSD ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
OpenBSD ( <a href="https://www.openbsd.org/">https://www.openbsd.org/</a> )	Nov 2002	README.OpenBSD ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )

Platform	Date Support Added	Notes
IRIX ( <a href="https://www.sgi.com/software/irix/">https://www.sgi.com/software/irix/</a> )	Dec 2002	README.IRIX ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
BSD/OS	Dec 2003	Removed from pkgsrc Mar 2025
AIX ( <a href="https://www-1.ibm.com/servers/aix/">https://www-1.ibm.com/servers/aix/</a> )	Dec 2003	README.AIX ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
Interix ( <a href="https://www.microsoft.com/windows/sfu/">https://www.microsoft.com/windows/sfu/</a> ) (Microsoft Windows Services for Unix)	Mar 2004	Removed from pkgsrc Apr 2025
DragonFlyBSD ( <a href="https://www.dragonflybsd.org/">https://www.dragonflybsd.org/</a> )	Oct 2004	
OSF/1 ( <a href="http://www.tru64.org/">http://www.tru64.org/</a> )	Nov 2004	README.OSF1 ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
HP-UX ( <a href="https://www.hp.com/products1/unix/">https://www.hp.com/products1/unix/</a> )	Apr 2007	README.HPUX ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
Haiku ( <a href="https://www.haiku-os.org/">https://www.haiku-os.org/</a> )	Sep 2010	README.Haiku ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
MirBSD ( <a href="https://www.mirbsd.org/">https://www.mirbsd.org/</a> )	Jan 2011	Removed from pkgsrc Mar 2025
Minix3 ( <a href="https://www.minix3.org/">https://www.minix3.org/</a> )	Nov 2011	README.Minix3 ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
Cygwin ( <a href="https://cygwin.com/">https://cygwin.com/</a> )	Mar 2013	README.Cygwin ( <a href="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/">https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/</a> )
GNU/kFreeBSD ( <a href="https://www.debian.org/ports/kfreebsd-gnu/">https://www.debian.org/ports/kfreebsd-gnu/</a> )	Jul 2013	Removed from pkgsrc Mar 2025
Bitrig ( <a href="https://www.bitrig.org/">https://www.bitrig.org/</a> )	Jun 2014	Removed from pkgsrc Sep 2022

## 1.2. Overview

This document is divided into three parts. The first, *The pkgsrc user's guide*, describes how one can use one of the packages in the Package Collection, either by installing a precompiled binary package, or by building one's own copy using the NetBSD package system. The second part, *The pkgsrc developer's guide*, explains how to prepare a package so it can be easily built by other NetBSD users without knowing about the package's building details. The third part, *The pkgsrc infrastructure internals* is

intended for those who want to understand how pkgsrc is implemented.

This document is available in various formats: HTML ([index.html](#)), PDF ([pkgsrc.pdf](#)), PS ([pkgsrc.ps](#)), TXT ([pkgsrc.txt](#)).

## 1.3. Terminology

There has been a lot of talk about “ports”, “packages”, etc. so far. Here is a description of all the terminology used within this document.

### Package

A set of files and building instructions that describe what’s necessary to build a certain piece of software using pkgsrc. Packages are traditionally stored under `/usr/pkgsrc`, but may be stored in any location, referred to as `PKGSRCDIR`.

### The NetBSD package system

This is the former name of “pkgsrc”. It is part of the NetBSD operating system and can be bootstrapped to run on non-NetBSD operating systems as well. It handles building (compiling), installing, and removing of packages.

### Distfile

This term describes the file or files that are provided by the author of the piece of software to distribute his work. All the changes necessary to build on NetBSD are reflected in the corresponding package. Usually the distfile is in the form of a compressed tar-archive, but other types are possible, too. Distfiles are usually stored below `/usr/pkgsrc/distfiles`.

### Port

This is the term used by FreeBSD and OpenBSD people for what we call a package. In NetBSD terminology, “port” refers to a different architecture.

### Precompiled/binary package

A set of binaries built with pkgsrc from a distfile and stuffed together in a single `.tgz` file so it can be installed on machines of the same machine architecture without the need to recompile. Packages are usually generated in `/usr/pkgsrc/packages`; there is also an archive on [ftp.NetBSD.org](http://ftp.NetBSD.org) ([ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages/](http://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages/)).

Sometimes, this is referred to by the term “package” too, especially in the context of precompiled packages.

### Program

The piece of software to be installed which will be constructed from all the files in the distfile by the actions defined in the corresponding package.

### 1.3.1. Roles involved in pkgsrc

#### pkgsrc users

The pkgsrc users are people who use the packages provided by pkgsrc. Typically they are system administrators. The people using the software that is inside the packages (maybe called “end users”) are not covered by the pkgsrc guide.

There are two kinds of pkgsrc users: Some only want to install pre-built binary packages. Others build the pkgsrc packages from source, either for installing them directly or for building binary packages themselves. For pkgsrc users Part I in *The pkgsrc guide* should provide all necessary documentation.

#### package maintainers

A package maintainer creates packages as described in Part II in *The pkgsrc guide*.

#### infrastructure developers

These people are involved in all those files that live in the `mk/` directory and below. Only these people should need to read through Part III in *The pkgsrc guide*, though others might be curious, too.

## 1.4. Typography

When giving examples for commands, shell prompts are used to show if the command should/can be issued as root, or if “normal” user privileges are sufficient. We use a `#` for root’s shell prompt, a `%` for users’ shell prompt, assuming they use the C-shell or tcsh and a `$` for Bourne shell and derivatives.

# I. The pkgsrc user's guide

# Chapter 2.

## *Getting help*

---

To get help when using pkgsrc, the definitive source is this document, the pkgsrc guide. If you don't find anything here, there are alternatives:

- The built-in pkgsrc help, which is available after bootstrapping pkgsrc. Run **bmake help topic=...** to get help for any topic, such as a variable name like `BUILD_DEFS`, a make target like **do-build**, a missing C or C++ function like **strcasecmp** or any other topic.

The available help topics are listed in Appendix E.

- To see the value of a single variable, run **bmake show-var VARNAME=x**.
- To see the values of the most common variables, run **bmake show-all**. These variables are grouped by topic. To see the variables for a single topic, run **bmake show-all-topic**, for example **bmake show-all-fetch**.
- The pkgsrc-users mailing list, to which you can subscribe (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/#pkgsrc-users>) and then ask your questions (<mailto:pkgsrc-users@NetBSD.org>).
- The #pkgsrc IRC channel, which is accessible via a web browser (<https://web.libera.chat/>) or by using a specialized chat program such as XChat (<http://xchat.org/>). Pick any user name and join the channel #pkgsrc.

## Chapter 3.

# *Where to get pkgsrc and how to keep it up-to-date*

---

Before you download and extract the files, you need to decide where you want to extract them. When using pkgsrc as root user, pkgsrc is usually installed in `/usr/pkgsrc`. You are though free to install the sources and binary packages wherever you want in your filesystem, provided that the pathname does not contain white-space or other characters that are interpreted specially by the shell and some other programs. A safe bet is to use only letters, digits, underscores and dashes.

### 3.1. Getting pkgsrc for the first time

Before you download any pkgsrc files, you should decide whether you want the *current* branch or the *stable* branch. The latter is forked on a quarterly basis from the current branch and only gets modified for security updates. The names of the stable branches are built from the year and the quarter, for example 2025Q2.

The second step is to decide *how* you want to download pkgsrc. You can get it as a tar file or via CVS. Both ways are described here.

Note that tar archive contains CVS working copy. Thus you can switch to using CVS at any later time.

#### 3.1.1. As tar archive

The primary download location for all pkgsrc files is <https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/> or <ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/> (it points to the same location). There are a number of subdirectories for different purposes, which are described in detail in Appendix D.

The tar archive for the current branch is in the directory `current` and is called `pkgsrc.tar.gz` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz>). It is autogenerated weekly.

To save download time we provide bzip2- and xz-compressed archives which are published at `pkgsrc.tar.bz2` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.bz2>) and `pkgsrc.tar.xz` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.xz>) respectively.

You can fetch the same files using FTP.

The tar file for the stable branch 2025Q2 is in the directory `pkgsrc-2025Q2` and is also called `pkgsrc.tar.gz` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/pkgsrc-2025Q2/pkgsrc.tar.gz>).

To download the latest pkgsrc stable tarball, run:

```
$ ftp ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/pkgsrc-2025Q2/pkgsrc.tar.gz
```

If you prefer, you can also fetch it using "wget", "curl", or your web browser.

Then, extract it with:

```
$ tar -xzf pkgsrc.tar.gz -C /usr
```

This will create the directory `pkgsrc/` in `/usr/` and all the package source will be stored under `/usr/pkgsrc/`.

To download pkgsrc-current, run:

```
$ ftp ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz
```

### 3.1.2. Via anonymous CVS

To fetch a specific pkgsrc stable branch, run:

```
$ cd /usr && cvs -q -z2 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -r pkgsrc-2025Q2 -P pkgsrc
```

This will create the directory `pkgsrc/` in your `/usr/` directory and all the package source will be stored under `/usr/pkgsrc/`.

To fetch the pkgsrc current branch, run:

```
$ cd /usr && cvs -q -z2 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -P pkgsrc
```

Refer to the list of available mirrors (<https://www.NetBSD.org/mirrors/#anoncvs>) to choose a faster CVS mirror, if needed.

If you get error messages from `rsh`, you need to set `CVS_RSH` variable. E.g.:

```
$ cd /usr && env CVS_RSH=ssh cvs -q -z2 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -P pkgsrc
```

Refer to documentation on your command shell how to set `CVS_RSH=ssh` permanently. For Bourne shells, you can set it in your `.profile` or better globally in `/etc/profile`:

```
# set CVS remote shell command
CVS_RSH=ssh
export CVS_RSH
```

By default, CVS doesn't do things like most people would expect it to do. But there is a way to convince CVS, by creating a file called `.cvsrc` in your home directory and saving the following lines to it. This file will save you lots of headache and some bug reports, so we strongly recommend it. You can find an explanation of this file in the CVS documentation.

```
# recommended CVS configuration file from the pkgsrc guide
cvs -q
checkout -P
update -dP
diff -upN
rdiff -u
release -d
```

## 3.2. Keeping pkgsrc up-to-date

The preferred way to keep pkgsrc up-to-date is via CVS (which also works if you have first installed it via a tar file). It saves bandwidth and hard disk activity, compared to downloading the tar file again.

### 3.2.1. Via tar files

#### Warning

When updating from a tar file, you first need to completely remove the old pkgsrc directory. Otherwise those files that have been removed from pkgsrc in the mean time will not be removed on your local disk, resulting in inconsistencies. When removing the old files, any changes that you have done to the pkgsrc files will be lost after updating. Therefore updating via CVS is strongly recommended.

Note that by default the distfiles and the binary packages are saved in the pkgsrc tree, so don't forget to rescue them before updating. You can also configure pkgsrc to store distfiles and packages in directories outside the pkgsrc tree by setting the `DISTDIR` and `PACKAGES` variables. See Chapter 6 for the details.

To update pkgsrc from a tar file, download the tar file as explained above. Then, make sure that you have not made any changes to the files in the pkgsrc directory. Remove the pkgsrc directory and extract the new tar file. Done.

### 3.2.2. Via CVS

To update pkgsrc via CVS, change to the `pkgsrc` directory and run `cv`s:

```
$ cd /usr/pkgsrc && cvs update -dP
```

If you get error messages from `rsh`, you need to set `CVS_RSH` variable as described above. E.g.:

```
$ cd /usr/pkgsrc && env CVS_RSH=ssh cvs up -dP
```

#### 3.2.2.1. Switching between different pkgsrc branches

When updating pkgsrc, the CVS program keeps track of the branch you selected. But if you, for whatever reason, want to switch from the stable branch to the current one, you can do it by adding the option `-A` after the `update` keyword. To switch from the current branch back to the stable branch, add the `-rpkgsrc-2025Q2` option.

#### 3.2.2.2. What happens to my changes when updating?

When you update pkgsrc, the CVS program will only touch those files that are registered in the CVS repository. That means that any packages that you created on your own will stay unmodified. If you change files that are managed by CVS, later updates will try to merge your changes with those that have been done by others. See the CVS manual, chapter `update` for details.

## Chapter 4.

# *Using pkgsrc on systems other than NetBSD*

---

### 4.1. Binary distribution

See Section 5.1.

### 4.2. Bootstrapping pkgsrc

pkgsrc can be bootstrapped for use in two different modes: privileged and unprivileged one. In unprivileged mode in contrast to privileged one all programs are installed under one particular user and cannot utilise privileged operations (packages don't create special users and all special file permissions like `setuid` are ignored).

Installing the bootstrap kit from source should be as simple as:

```
# env CVS_RSH=ssh cvs -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -P pkgsrc
# cd pkgsrc/bootstrap
# ./bootstrap
```

To bootstrap in unprivileged mode pass “`--unprivileged`” flag to **bootstrap**

By default, in privileged mode pkgsrc uses `/usr/pkg` for *prefix* where programs will be installed in, and `/usr/pkg/pkgdb` for the package database directory where pkgsrc will do its internal bookkeeping, `/var` is used as *varbase*, where packages install their persistent data. In unprivileged mode pkgsrc uses `~/pkg` for *prefix*, `~/pkg/pkgdb` for the package database, and `~/pkg/var` for *varbase*.

You can change default layout using command-line arguments. Run “`./bootstrap --help`” to get details.

**Note:** The bootstrap installs a **bmake** tool. Use this **bmake** when building via pkgsrc. For examples in this guide, use **bmake** instead of “make”.

**Note:** It is possible to bootstrap multiple instances of pkgsrc using non-intersecting directories. Use **bmake** corresponding to the installation you're working with to build and install packages.

# Chapter 5.

## *Using pkgsrc*

---

Basically, there are two ways of using pkgsrc. The first is to only install the package tools and to use binary packages that someone else has prepared. This is the “pkg” in pkgsrc. The second way is to install the “src” of pkgsrc, too. Then you are able to build your own packages, and you can still use binary packages from someone else.

### 5.1. Using binary packages

On the [cdn.NetBSD.org](https://cdn.NetBSD.org) (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/>) site and mirrors, there are collections of binary packages, ready to be installed. These binary packages have been built using the default settings for the directories, that is:

- `/usr/pkg` for LOCALBASE, where most of the files are installed,
- `/usr/pkg/etc` for configuration files,
- `/var` for VARBASE, where those files are installed that may change after installation.

If you cannot use these directories for whatever reasons (maybe because you’re not root), you cannot use these binary packages, but have to build the packages yourself, which is explained in Section 4.2.

#### 5.1.1. Finding binary packages

To install binary packages, you first need to know from where to get them. The first place where you should look is on the main pkgsrc CDN in the directory `/pub/pkgsrc/packages` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages/>).

This directory contains binary packages for multiple platforms. First, select your operating system. Then, select your hardware architecture, and in the third step, the OS version and the “version” of pkgsrc.

In this directory, you may find a file called `bootstrap.tar.gz` which contains the package management tools. If the file is missing, it is likely that your operating system already provides those tools. Download the file and extract it in the `/` directory. It will create the directories `/usr/pkg` (containing the tools for managing binary packages and the database of installed packages).

#### 5.1.2. Installing binary packages

In the directory from the last section, there is a subdirectory called `All/`, which contains all the binary packages that are available for the platform, excluding those that may not be distributed via HTTP or FTP.

To install packages directly from an FTP or HTTP server, run the following commands in a Bourne-compatible shell (be sure to `su` to root first):

```
# PATH="/usr/pkg/sbin:/usr/pkg/bin:$PATH"
# PKG_PATH="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages"
# PKG_PATH="$PKG_PATH/OPSYS/ARCH/VERSIONS/All/"
# export PATH PKG_PATH
# pkg_add pkgin
```

Instead of URLs, you can also use local paths, for example if you are installing from a set of CDROMs, DVDs or an NFS-mounted repository. If you want to install packages from multiple sources, you can separate them by a semicolon in `PKG_PATH`.

After these preparations, installing a package is very easy:

```
# pkgin search nginx
nginx-1.19.6      Lightweight HTTP server and mail proxy server
nginx-1.18.0nb8  Lightweight HTTP server and mail proxy server
# pkgin install zsh nginx-1.19.6 vim
```

Note that `pkgin` is a user-friendly frontend to the `pkg_*` tools.

Any prerequisite packages needed to run the package in question will be installed, too, assuming they are present in the repository.

After you've installed packages, be sure to have `/usr/pkg/bin` and `/usr/pkg/sbin` in your `PATH` so you can actually start the just installed program.

### 5.1.3. Updating packages

To update binary packages, it is recommended that you use `pkgin upgrade`. This will compare the remote package repository to your locally installed packages and safely replace any older packages.

Note that pkgsrc is released as quarterly branches. If you are updating to a newer quarterly branch of pkgsrc, you may need to adjust the repository in `/usr/pkg/etc/pkgin/repositories.conf`.

### 5.1.4. Deinstalling packages

To deinstall a package, it does not matter whether it was installed from source code or from a binary package. Neither the `pkgin` or the `pkg_delete` command need to know.

To delete a package, you can just run `pkgin remove package-name`. The package name can be given with or without version number.

### 5.1.5. Getting information about installed packages

The `pkg_info` shows information about installed packages or binary package files. As with other management tools, it works with packages installed from source or binaries.

### 5.1.6. Checking for security vulnerabilities in installed packages

The pkgsrc Security Team and Packages Groups maintain a list of known vulnerabilities to packages which are (or have been) included in pkgsrc. The list is available from the NetBSD CDN at <https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/NetBSD/packages/vulns/pkg-vulnerabilities>.

Please note that not every "vulnerability" with a CVE assignment is exploitable in every configuration. Some bugs are marked as active simply because an fix was not marked as such. Operating system specific hardening and mitigation features may also reduce the impact of bugs.

Through **pkg\_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities**, this list can be downloaded automatically, and a security audit of all packages installed on a system can take place.

There are two components to auditing. The first step, **pkg\_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities**, is for downloading the list of vulnerabilities from the NetBSD FTP site. The second step, **pkg\_admin audit**, checks to see if any of your installed packages are vulnerable. If a package is vulnerable, you will see output similar to the following:

```
Package samba-2.0.9 has a local-root-shell vulnerability, see
  https://www.samba.org/samba/whatsnew/macroexploit.html
```

You may wish to have the vulnerabilities (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/vulnerabilities>) file downloaded daily so that it remains current. This may be done by adding an appropriate entry to the root users crontab(5) entry. For example the entry

```
# Download vulnerabilities file
0 3 * * * /usr/pkg/sbin/pkg_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities >/dev/null 2>&1
# Audit the installed packages and email results to root
9 3 * * * /usr/pkg/sbin/pkg_admin audit |mail -s "Installed package audit result" \
  root >/dev/null 2>&1
```

will update the vulnerability list every day at 3AM, followed by an audit at 3:09AM. The result of the audit are then emailed to root. On NetBSD this may be accomplished instead by adding the following line to `/etc/daily.conf`:

```
fetch_pkg_vulnerabilities=YES
```

to fetch the vulnerability list from the daily security script. The system is set to audit the packages by default but can be set explicitly, if desired (not required), by adding the following line to `/etc/security.conf`:

```
check_pkg_vulnerabilities=YES
```

see `daily.conf(5)` and `security.conf(5)` for more details.

### 5.1.7. Finding if newer versions of your installed packages are in pkgsrc

Install `pkgtools/lintpkgsrc` and run **lintpkgsrc** with the `-i` argument to check if any packages are stale, e.g.

```
% lintpkgsrc -i
...
Version mismatch: 'tcsh' 6.09.00 vs 6.10.00
```

### 5.1.8. Other administrative functions

The `pkg_admin` executes various administrative functions on the package system.

## 5.2. Building packages from source

After obtaining pkgsrc, the `pkgsrc` directory now contains a set of packages, organized into categories. You can browse the online index of packages, or run **make readme** from the `pkgsrc` directory to build local `README.html` files for all packages, viewable with any web browser such as `www/lynx` or `www/firefox`.

The default *prefix* for installed packages is `/usr/pkg`. If you wish to change this, you should do so by setting `LOCALBASE` in `mk.conf`. You should not try to use multiple different `LOCALBASE` definitions on the same system (inside a chroot is an exception).

The rest of this chapter assumes that the package is already in `pkgsrc`. If it is not, see Part II in *The pkgsrc guide* for instructions how to create your own packages.

### 5.2.1. Requirements

To build packages from source, you need a working C compiler. On NetBSD, you need to install the “comp” and the “text” distribution sets. If you want to build X11-related packages, the “xbase” and “xcomp” distribution sets are required, too.

### 5.2.2. Fetching distfiles

The first step for building a package is downloading the distfiles (i.e. the unmodified source). If they have not yet been downloaded, `pkgsrc` will fetch them automatically.

If you have all files that you need in the `distfiles` directory, you don't need to connect. If the distfiles are on CD-ROM, you can mount the CD-ROM on `/cdrom` and add:

```
DISTDIR=/cdrom/pkgsrc/distfiles
```

to your `mk.conf`.

By default a list of distribution sites will be randomly intermixed to prevent huge load on servers which holding popular packages (for example, SourceForge.net mirrors). Thus, every time when you need to fetch yet another distfile all the mirrors will be tried in new (random) order. You can turn this feature off by setting `MASTER_SORT_RANDOM=NO` (for `PKG_DEVELOPERS` it's already disabled).

You can overwrite some of the major distribution sites to fit to sites that are close to your own. By setting one or two variables you can modify the order in which the master sites are accessed. `MASTER_SORT`

contains a whitespace delimited list of domain suffixes. `MASTER_SORT_REGEX` is even more flexible, it contains a whitespace delimited list of regular expressions. It has higher priority than `MASTER_SORT`. Have a look at `pkgsrc/mk/defaults/mk.conf` to find some examples. This may save some of your bandwidth and time.

You can change these settings either in your shell's environment, or, if you want to keep the settings, by editing the `mk.conf` file, and adding the definitions there.

If a package depends on many other packages (such as `meta-pkgs/kde4`), the build process may alternate between periods of downloading source, and compiling. To ensure you have all the source downloaded initially you can run the command:

```
% make fetch-list | sh
```

which will output and run a set of shell commands to fetch the necessary files into the `distfiles` directory. You can also choose to download the files manually.

### 5.2.3. How to build and install

Once the software has downloaded, any patches will be applied, then it will be compiled for you. This may take some time depending on your computer, and how many other packages the software depends on and their compile time.

**Note:** If using bootstrap or pkgsrc on a non-NetBSD system, use the pkgsrc **bmake** command instead of "make" in the examples in this guide.

For example, type

```
% cd misc/figlet
% make
```

at the shell prompt to build the various components of the package.

The next stage is to actually install the newly compiled program onto your system. Do this by entering:

```
% make install
```

while you are still in the directory for whatever package you are installing.

Installing the package on your system may require you to be root. However, pkgsrc has a *just-in-time-su* feature, which allows you to only become root for the actual installation step.

That's it, the software should now be installed and setup for use. You can now enter:

```
% make clean
```

to remove the compiled files in the work directory, as you shouldn't need them any more. If other packages were also added to your system (dependencies) to allow your program to compile, you can tidy these up also with the command:

```
% make clean-depends
```

Taking the figlet utility as an example, we can install it on our system by building as shown in Appendix C.

The program is installed under the default root of the packages tree - `/usr/pkg`. Should this not conform to your tastes, set the `LOCALBASE` variable in your environment, and it will use that value as the root of your packages tree. So, to use `/usr/local`, set `LOCALBASE=/usr/local` in your environment. Please note that you should use a directory which is dedicated to packages and not shared with other programs (i.e., do not try and use `LOCALBASE=/usr`). Also, you should not try to add any of your own files or directories (such as `src/`, `obj/`, or `pkgsrc/`) below the `LOCALBASE` tree. This is to prevent possible conflicts between programs and other files installed by the package system and whatever else may have been installed there.

Some packages look in `mk.conf` to alter some configuration options at build time. Have a look at `pkgsrc/mk/defaults/mk.conf` to get an overview of what will be set there by default. Environment variables such as `LOCALBASE` can be set in `mk.conf` to save having to remember to set them each time you want to use `pkgsrc`.

Occasionally, people want to “look under the covers” to see what is going on when a package is building or being installed. This may be for debugging purposes, or out of simple curiosity. A number of utility values have been added to help with this.

1. If you invoke the `make(1)` command with `PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL=2`, then a huge amount of information will be displayed. For example,

```
make patch PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL=2
```

will show all the commands that are invoked, up to and including the “patch” stage.

2. If you want to know the value of a certain `make(1)` definition, then the `VARIABLE` definition should be used, in conjunction with the `show-var` target. e.g. to show the expansion of the `make(1)` variable `LOCALBASE`:

```
% make show-var VARIABLE=LOCALBASE
/usr/pkg
%
```

If you want to install a binary package that you’ve either created yourself (see next section), that you put into `pkgsrc/packages` manually or that is located on a remote FTP server, you can use the “bin-install” target. This target will install a binary package - if available - via `pkg_add(1)`, else do a **make package**. The list of remote FTP sites searched is kept in the variable `BINPKG_SITES`, which defaults to `ftp.NetBSD.org`. Any flags that should be added to `pkg_add(1)` can be put into `BIN_INSTALL_FLAGS`. See `pkgsrc/mk/defaults/mk.conf` for more details.

A final word of warning: If you set up a system that has a non-standard setting for `LOCALBASE`, be sure to set that before any packages are installed, as you cannot use several directories for the same purpose. Doing so will result in `pkgsrc` not being able to properly detect your installed packages, and fail miserably. Note also that precompiled binary packages are usually built with the default `LOCALBASE` of `/usr/pkg`, and that you should *not* install any if you use a non-standard `LOCALBASE`.

# Chapter 6.

## *Configuring pkgsrc*

---

The whole pkgsrc system is configured in a single file, usually called `mk.conf`. In which directory pkgsrc looks for that file depends on the installation. On NetBSD, when you use `make(1)` from the base system, it is in the directory `/etc/`. In all other cases the default location is `${PREFIX}/etc/`, depending on where you told the bootstrap program to install the binary packages.

The format of the configuration file is that of the usual BSD-style `Makefiles`. The whole pkgsrc configuration is done by setting variables in this file. Note that you can define all kinds of variables, and no special error checking (for example for spelling mistakes) takes place.

### 6.1. General configuration

The following variables apply to all pkgsrc packages. A complete list of the variables that can be configured by the user is available in `mk/defaults/mk.conf`, together with some comments that describe each variable's intent.

- `LOCALBASE`: Where packages will be installed. The default is `/usr/pkg`. Do not mix binary packages with different `LOCALBASE`s!
- `CROSSBASE`: Where “cross” category packages will be installed. The default is `${LOCALBASE}/cross`.
- `X11BASE`: Where X11 is installed on the system. The default is `/usr/X11R7`.
- `DISTDIR`: Where to store the downloaded copies of the original source distributions used for building pkgsrc packages. The default is `${PKGSRC_DIR}/distfiles`.
- `PKG_DBDIR`: Where the database about installed packages is stored. The default is `/usr/pkg/pkgdb`.
- `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`: If set, override the packages' `MASTER_SITES` with this value.
- `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`: Backup location(s) for distribution files and patch files if not found locally or in `${MASTER_SITES}` or `${PATCH_SITES}` respectively. The defaults is `ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/${DIST_SUBDIR}/`.
- `BINPKG_SITES`: List of sites carrying binary pkgs. `rel` and `arch` are replaced with OS release (“2.0”, etc.) and architecture (“mipsel”, etc.).
- `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES`: List of acceptable licenses. License names are case-sensitive. Whenever you try to build a package whose license is not in this list, you will get an error message. If the license condition is simple enough, the error message will include specific instructions on how to change this variable.

## 6.2. Variables affecting the build process

- `PACKAGES`: The top level directory for the binary packages. The default is `${PKGSRCDIR}/packages`.
- `WRKOBJDIR`: The top level directory where, if defined, the separate working directories will get created, and symbolically linked to from `${WRKDIR}` (see below). This is useful for building packages on several architectures, then `${PKGSRCDIR}` can be NFS-mounted while `${WRKOBJDIR}` is local to every architecture. (It should be noted that `PKGSRCDIR` should not be set by the user — it is an internal definition which refers to the root of the pkgsrc tree. It is possible to have many pkgsrc tree instances.)
- `LOCALPATCHES`: Directory for local patches that aren't part of pkgsrc. See Section 12.3 for more information.
- `PKGMAKECONF`: Location of the `mk.conf` file used by a package's BSD-style Makefile. If this is not set, `MAKECONF` is set to `/dev/null` to avoid picking up settings used by builds in `/usr/src`.

## 6.3. Preferences for native or pkgsrc software

Whenever a package depends on a package that has a `builtin.mk` file, the dependent package can either use the built-in (native) version from the base system or the pkgsrc-provided version. This only affects dependencies, so it is still possible to build the pkgsrc package `devel/pcre++` even when other packages depend on the native `pcre++` version instead.

To force using the pkgsrc-provided version for a particular package, define “`PREFER_PKGSR = package-ID`” in `mk.conf`. To force using the native package, define “`PREFER_NATIVE = package-ID`”. In both cases, the `package-ID` is the one from the `buildlink3.mk` of the package. In most cases, this ID is the same as the directory name of the package, but for example, `devel/pcre++` has the package ID “`pcrexx`”.

For the packages that are not listed by their package ID, pkgsrc uses the pkgsrc-provided version if `PREFER_PKGSR` contains the word “`yes`”. Otherwise, if `PREFER_NATIVE` contains the word “`yes`”, pkgsrc uses the native version. For example, to require using the pkgsrc-provided versions for all but the most basic bits on a NetBSD system, you can set:

```
PREFER_PKGSR=  yes
PREFER_NATIVE=  getopt skey tcp_wrappers
```

A package *must* have a `builtin.mk` file to be listed in `PREFER_NATIVE`, otherwise it is simply ignored in that list.

`PREFER_PKGSR` and `PREFER_NATIVE` should be set during bootstrap to ensure that the bootstrap process does not use inappropriate native tools as dependencies for core packages.

```
# ./bootstrap --prefer-pkgsrc yes --prefer-native openssl
```

Switching between settings globally at a later date can introduce complications with dependency resolution. This is caused by packages built with the opposite preference being installed alongside each other. Hence, when changing any of these variables after bootstrap, you need to rebuild all packages depending on those whose preference has been changed. This is not trivial and should be avoided.

When using pkgsrc on Linux systems, there is high risk of “leakage”, where programs installed by pkgsrc may inadvertently use a command or library not installed by pkgsrc, e.g. those installed by yum or apt. Such foreign dependencies may be installed, removed, or upgraded to a version incompatible with the pkgsrc package at any time, causing pkgsrc packages to subsequently malfunction. Pkgsrc cannot prevent this, as it has no control over other package managers. Another potential problem is that under Redhat Enterprise and related Linux systems, yum packages are only patched and never upgraded, so eventually they may become too outdated for use by pkgsrc. Even intentionally using foreign dependencies, not considered leakage, can lead to these problems, so it is generally discouraged. In order to minimize such problems, PREFER\_PKGSRCDIR defaults to “yes” on Linux systems. This ensures that pkgsrc is aware of any changes to dependency packages and can rebuild or upgrade the entire dependency tree as needed. This default can be overridden by setting `--prefer-pkgsrc` to a list of packages and `--prefer-native` to “yes”.

## 6.4. Variables affecting the installation process

- `PKGSRC_KEEP_BIN_PKGS`: By default, binary packages of built packages are preserved in `$(PACKAGES)/All`. Setting this variable to “no” prevents this.

Packages have to support installation into a subdirectory of `WRKDIR`. This allows a package to be built, before the actual filesystem is touched. `DESTDIR` support exists in two variations:

- Basic `DESTDIR` support means that the package installation and packaging is still run as root.
- Full `DESTDIR` support can run the complete build, installation and packaging as normal user. Root privileges are only needed to add packages.

With basic `DESTDIR` support, `make clean` needs to be run as root.

Considering the `foo/bar` package, `DESTDIR` full support can be tested using the following commands

```
$ id
uid=1000(myusername) gid=100(users) groups=100(users),0(wheel)
$ mkdir $HOME/packages
$ cd $PKGSRC_DIR/foo/bar
```

Verify `DESTDIR` full support, no root privileges should be needed

```
$ make stage-install
```

Create a package without root privileges

```
$ make PACKAGES=$HOME/packages package
```

For the following command, you must be able to gain root privileges using `su(1)`

```
$ make PACKAGES=$HOME/packages install
```

Then, as a simple user

```
$ make clean
```

## 6.5. Selecting and configuring the compiler

### 6.5.1. Selecting the compiler

By default, `pkgsrc` will use GCC to build packages. This may be overridden by setting the following variables in `/etc/mk.conf`:

`PKGSRC_COMPILER`:

This is a list of values specifying the chain of compilers to invoke when building packages. Valid values are:

- `ccc`: Compaq C Compilers (Tru64)
- `ccache`: compiler cache (chainable)
- `clang`: Clang C and Objective-C compiler
- `distcc`: distributed C/C++ (chainable)
- `f2c`: Fortran 77 to C compiler (chainable)
- `icc`: Intel C++ Compiler (Linux)
- `ido`: SGI IRIS Development Option cc (IRIX 5)
- `gcc`: GNU C/C++ Compiler
- `hp`: HP-UX C/aC++ compilers
- `mipspro`: Silicon Graphics, Inc. MIPSpro (n32/n64)
- `mipspro-ucode`: Silicon Graphics, Inc. MIPSpro (o32)
- `sunpro`: Sun Microsystems, Inc. WorkShip/Forte/Sun ONE Studio
- `xlc`: IBM's XL C/C++ compiler suite

The default is “`gcc`”. You can use `ccache` and/or `distcc` with an appropriate `PKGSRC_COMPILER` setting, e.g. “`ccache gcc`”. This variable should always be terminated with a value for a real compiler. Note that only one real compiler should be listed (e.g. “`sunpro gcc`” is not allowed).

`GCC_REQD`:

This specifies the minimum version of GCC to use when building packages. If the system GCC doesn't satisfy this requirement, then `pkgsrc` will build and install one of the GCC packages to use instead.

`PYTHON_VERSION_DEFAULT`:

Specifies which version of python to use when several options are available.

`PKGSRC_FORTRAN`:

Specifies the Fortran compiler to use. The default is `gfortran`.

`GFORTRAN_VERSION`:

If `PKGSRC_FORTRAN= gfortran` is used, this option specifies which version to use.

### 6.5.2. Additional flags to the compiler (CFLAGS)

If you wish to set the `CFLAGS` variable, please make sure to use the `+=` operator instead of the `=` operator:

```
CFLAGS+=          -your -flags
```

Using `CFLAGS=` (i.e. without the “+”) may lead to problems with packages that need to add their own flags. You may want to take a look at the `devel/cpuflags` package if you’re interested in optimization specifically for the current CPU.

### 6.5.3. Additional flags to the linker (LDFLAGS)

If you want to pass flags to the linker, both in the configure step and the build step, you can do this in two ways. Either set `LDFLAGS` or `LIBS`. The difference between the two is that `LIBS` will be appended to the command line, while `LDFLAGS` come earlier. `LDFLAGS` is pre-loaded with `rpath` settings for ELF machines depending on the setting of `USE_IMAKE` or the inclusion of `mk/x11.buildlink3.mk`. As with `CFLAGS`, if you do not wish to override these settings, use the `+=` operator:

```
LDFLAGS+=        -your -linkerflags
```

## 6.6. Developer/advanced settings

- `PKG_DEVELOPER`: Run some sanity checks that package developers want:
  - make sure patches apply with zero fuzz
  - run `check-shlibs` to see that all binaries will find their shared libs.
- `CHECK_FILES_STRICT`: Also check `VARBASE` and `PKG_SYSCONFDIR` values in `PLIST` entries.
- `PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL`: The level of debugging output which is displayed whilst making and installing the package. The default value for this is 0, which will not display the commands as they are executed (normal, default, quiet operation); the value 1 will display all shell commands before their invocation, and the value 2 will display both the shell commands before their invocation, as well as their actual execution progress with `set -x`.

## 6.7. Selecting Build Options

Some packages have build time options, usually to select between different dependencies, enable optional support for big dependencies or enable experimental features.

To see which options, if any, a package supports, and which options are mutually exclusive, run **make show-options**, for example:

```
The following options are supported by this package:
```

```

    ssl      Enable SSL support.
Exactly one of the following gecko options is required:
    firefox  Use firefox as gecko rendering engine.
    mozilla  Use mozilla as gecko rendering engine.
At most one of the following database options may be selected:
    mysql    Enable support for MySQL database.
    pgsql    Enable support for PostgreSQL database.

```

```

These options are enabled by default: firefox
These options are currently enabled: mozilla ssl

```

The following variables can be defined in `mk.conf` to select which options to enable for a package: `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS`, which can be used to select or disable options for all packages that support them, and `PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`, which can be used to select or disable options specifically for package `pkgbase`. Options listed in these variables are selected, options preceded by “-” are disabled. A few examples:

```

$ grep "PKG.*OPTION" mk.conf
PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS=    -arts -dvdread -esound
PKG_OPTIONS.kdebase=    debug -sasl
PKG_OPTIONS.apache=     suexec

```

It is important to note that options that were specifically suggested by the package maintainer must be explicitly removed if you do not wish to include the option. If you are unsure you can view the current state with **make show-options**.

The following settings are consulted in the order given, and the last setting that selects or disables an option is used:

1. the default options as suggested by the package maintainer
2. the options implied by the settings of legacy variables (see below)
3. `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS`
4. `PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`

For groups of mutually exclusive options, the last option selected is used, all others are automatically disabled. If an option of the group is explicitly disabled, the previously selected option, if any, is used. It is an error if no option from a required group of options is selected, and building the package will fail.

Before the options framework was introduced, build options were selected by setting a variable (often named `USE_FOO`) in `mk.conf` for each option. To ease transition to the options framework for the user, these legacy variables are converted to the appropriate options setting (`PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`) automatically. A warning is issued to prompt the user to update `mk.conf` to use the options framework directly. Support for the legacy variables will be removed eventually.

## Chapter 7.

# *Creating binary packages*

---

### 7.1. Building a single binary package

Once you have built and installed a package, you can create a *binary package* which can be installed on another system with `pkg_add(1)`. This saves having to build the same package on a group of hosts and wasting CPU time. It also provides a simple means for others to install your package, should you distribute it.

To create a binary package, change into the appropriate directory in `pkgsrc`, and run **make package**:

```
$ cd misc/figlet
$ make package
```

This will build your package (if not already done) and package it into a binary package. You can then use the **pkg\_\*** tools to manipulate it. Binary packages are created in `PACKAGES`, which defaults to `/usr/pkgsrc/packages`, in the form of a compressed tar file. See Section C.2 for a continuation of the above `misc/figlet` example.

See Chapter 23 for information on how to submit such a binary package.

### 7.2. Settings for creation of binary packages

See Section 13.17.

## Chapter 8.

# *Creating binary packages for everything in pkgsrc (bulk builds)*

---

For a number of reasons, you may want to build binary packages for a large selected set of packages in pkgsrc, or even for all pkgsrc packages. For instance, when you have multiple machines that should run the same software, it is wasted time if they all build their packages themselves from source. Or you may want to build a list of packages you want and check them before deploying onto production systems. There is a way of getting a set of binary packages: the bulk build system, or pbulk ("p" stands for "parallel"). This chapter describes how to set it up.

### 8.1. Preparations

First of all, you have to decide whether you build all packages or a limited set of them. Full bulk builds usually consume a lot more resources, both space and time, than builds for some practical sets of packages. A number of particularly heavy packages exist that are not actually interesting to a wide audience. (The approximate resource consumption for a full bulk build is given in section Section 8.3.) For limited bulk builds you need to make a list of packages you want to build. Note that all their dependencies will be built, so you don't need to track them manually.

During bulk builds various packages are installed and deinstalled in `/usr/pkg` (or whatever `LOCALBASE` is), so make sure that you don't need any package during the builds. Essentially, you should provide a fresh system, either a chroot environment or something even more restrictive, depending on what the operating system provides, or dedicate the whole physical machine. As a useful side effect this makes sure that bulk builds cannot break anything in your system. There have been numerous cases where certain packages tried to install files outside the `LOCALBASE` or wanted to edit some files in `/etc`.

### 8.2. Running a bulk build

Running a bulk build works roughly as follows:

- First, build the pbulk infrastructure in a fresh pkgsrc location.
- Then, build each of the packages from a clean installation directory using the infrastructure.

## 8.2.1. Configuration

To simplify configuration, we provide the helper script `mk/pbulk/pbulk.sh`.

In order to use it, prepare a clear system (real one, chroot environment, jail, zone, virtual machine).

Configure network access to fetch distribution files. Create a user with name "pbulk".

Fetch and extract pkgsrc. Use a command like one of these:

```
# (cd /usr && ftp -o - https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz | tar -zxf-)
# (cd /usr && fetch -o - https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz | tar -zxf-)
# (cd /usr && cvs -Q -z3 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot get -P pkgsrc)
```

Or any other way that fits (e.g., curl, wget).

Deploy and configure pbulk tools, e.g.:

```
# sh pbulk.sh -n # use native make, no bootstrap kit needed (for use on NetBSD)
# sh pbulk.sh -n -c mk.conf.frag # native, apply settings from given mk.conf fragment
# sh pbulk.sh -nlc mk.conf.frag # native, apply settings, configure for limited build
```

**Note:** `mk.conf.frag` is a fragment of `mk.conf` that contains settings you want to apply to packages you build. For instance,

```
PKG_DEVELOPER=      yes      # perform more checks
X11_TYPE=           modular  # use pkgsrc X11
SKIP_LICENSE_CHECK= yes      # accept all licences (useful
                                # when building all packages)
```

If configured for limited list, replace the list in `/usr/pbulk/etc/pbulk.list` with your list of packages, one per line without empty lines or comments. E.g.:

```
www/firefox
mail/thunderbird
misc/libreoffice4
```

At this point you can also review configuration in `/usr/pbulk/etc` and make final amendments, if wanted.

Start it:

```
# /usr/pbulk/bin/bulkbuild
```

After it finishes, you'll have `/mnt` filled with distribution files, binary packages, and reports, plain text summary in `/mnt/bulklog/meta/report.txt`

**Note:** The `pbulk.sh` script does not cover all possible use cases. While being ready to run, it serves as a good starting point to understand and build more complex setups. The script is kept small enough for better understanding.

**Note:** The `pbulk.sh` script supports running unprivileged bulk build and helps configuring distributed bulk builds. Distributed bulk builds support either building in worker chroots (each node is a path to a

different chroot) that replicate the target system, including the pbulk prefix, or remote machines (each node is an IP address that must be accessible over SSH without a password).

### 8.3. Requirements of a full bulk build

A complete bulk build requires lots of disk space. Some of the disk space can be read-only, some other must be writable. Some can be on remote filesystems (such as NFS) and some should be local. Some can be temporary filesystems, others must survive a sudden reboot.

- 70 GB for the distfiles (read-write, remote, temporary)
- 60 GB for the binary packages (read-write, remote, permanent)
- 1 GB for the pkgsrc tree (read-only, remote, permanent)
- 5 GB for LOCALBASE (read-write, local, temporary)
- 10 GB for the log files (read-write, remote, permanent)
- 5 GB for temporary files (read-write, local, temporary)

### 8.4. Bulk build variants

To ensure that pkgsrc packages work in different configurations, it makes sense to run non-default bulk builds from time to time. This section lists some ideas for bulk builds that intentionally let packages fail if they don't follow the pkgsrc style.

#### 8.4.1. Detect unknown configure options

Add the following line to `mk.conf`.

```
GNU_CONFIGURE_STRICT= yes
```

When a package fails this additional check, the most common cause is that the configure option was valid for an older version of the package but does not apply anymore. In that case, just remove it.

#### 8.4.2. Detect classes of bugs by forcing compiler warnings

The job of a compiler is not restricted to producing executable code, most compilers also detect typical programming mistakes. The pkgsrc compiler wrappers make it easy to force compiler options when the package is built. This can be used to find typical bugs across all packages that are in pkgsrc. By reporting these bugs upstream, the packages will be more reliable with the next updates.

Add some of the following lines to `mk.conf`:

```
CFLAGS+= -Werror=char-subscripts  
CFLAGS+= -Werror=implicit-function-declaration
```

When a package fails to build using these stricter compiler options, document the circumstances in which the compiler produced the error message. This includes:

- The platform (`MACHINE_PLATFORM`)
- The source file
- An excerpt of the code. GCC and Clang already do this as part of the diagnostic.
- The exact error message from the compiler.

If a package produces these error messages, but the package is fine, record this in your local `mk.conf`, like this, to skip this check in the next builds:

```
.if ${PKGPATH} == category/package
# Version ${VERSION} failed on ${MACHINE_PLATFORM}:
# error message
# code
# Reason why the code does not need to be fixed.
BUILDLINK_TRANSFORM+= rm:-Werror=char-subscripts
.endif
```

If the error messages from the compiler are valid and the code needs to be fixed, prepare a local patch (see `LOCALPATCHES`) and report the bug to the upstream authors of the package, providing them with the information you collected above.

Patches that are not essential for the package to work should only be reported upstream but not committed to pkgsrc, to make future updates easier.

### 8.4.3. Force compiler options only in the build phase

When adding custom compiler flags via `CFLAGS`, these apply to all phases of the package build process. Especially in the configure phase, adding `-Werror` leads to wrong decisions. The GNU configure scripts feed many small test programs to the C compiler to see whether certain headers are available, functions are defined in a library and programs can be run. In many cases these programs would not survive a strict compiler run with `-Wall -Wextra -Werror`.

The pkgsrc infrastructure is flexible enough to support compiler options being added between the `configure` and `build` phases. It's a little more complicated than the other examples in this section but still easy enough.

The basic idea is to use the pkgsrc compiler wrapper to inject the desired compiler options. The compiler wrapper's original task is to hide unwanted directories of include files and to normalize compiler options. It does this by wrapping the compiler command and rewriting the command line. To see this in action, run **make patch** in a package directory and examine the `work/.cwrappers/config` directory. It contains individual configurations for the C compiler and the related tools. The plan is to find a hook between the `configure` and `build` phases, and to modify these configuration files at that point.

To find this hook, have a look at `mk/build/build.mk`, which contains among others the `pre-build-checks-hook`. The word `checks` doesn't quite fit, but the `pre-build-hook` sounds good enough.

The code to be included in `mk.conf` is:

```
# Just a few example options.
BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS=      -Wall -Werror -O2 -DTEMPDIR=' "/tmp"'

.if ${BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS:U:M*}
pre-build-checks-hook: add-build-only-cflags

add-build-only-cflags: .PHONY
    ${RUN} cd ${CWRAPPERS_CONFIG_DIR};      \
    ${TEST} ! -f ${.TARGET} || exit 0;      \
    for flag in ${BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS}; do    \
        ${ECHO} "append=${$flag}" >> cc;   \
    done;                                    \
    > ${.TARGET}
.endif
```

(When editing the `mk.conf`, make sure that the commands of the `add-build-only-cflags` target are indented with a tab, not with spaces.)

The condition in the `.if` statement contains the `:U` modifier to prevent parse errors if the variable should be undefined, possibly because it is only defined for a subset of the packages. The `:M*` modifier ensures that there is at least one compiler option, to prevent a syntax error in the shell parser.

The code around the `${.TARGET}` variable ensures that the additional compiler options are only appended once, even if **bmake build** is run multiple times. To do this, it creates a marker file.

To verify that this setup works, run **bmake configure** in a package directory. Up to now, everything works as usual. Examine the directory `work/.cwrappers/config` to see that the compiler options from `BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS` are not yet added to the file `cc`. Examine the tail of the `work/.work.log` file to see that the normal compiler options are used.

Now run **bmake build**. This will append the options to the file `cc` and will create the marker file in the same directory. After that, the build starts as usual, but with the added compiler options. Examine the tail of the file `work/.work.log` to see that the lines starting with `[*]` don't contain the compiler options, but the corresponding lines starting with `<.>` do end with these options.

Building packages using this setup variant and fixing the resulting bugs is the same as in Section 8.4.2.

#### 8.4.4. Use custom directories

Some directories like `PREFIX`, `VARBASE`, `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`, `PKGMANDIR`, `PKG_INFODIR` can be configured in `pkgsrc`. Set these to arbitrary paths during bootstrap or afterwards in `mk.conf`.

```
PREFIX=          /a-random-uuid
PKG_SYSCONFDIR= /a-random-uuid
VARBASE=        /a-random-uuid
PKGMANDIR=      a-random-uuid
PKG_INFODIR=    a-random-uuid
```

#### 8.4.5. Turn warnings into errors

When building a package, warnings are typically ignored since they just flow by and do not cause the build to fail immediately. To find these warnings, redefine them to errors in `mk.conf`.

```
DELAYED_WARNING_MSG=    ${DELAYED_ERROR_MSG} "(was warning)"
WARNING_MSG=            ${FAIL_MSG} "(was warning)"
```

(There are many more classes of warnings in pkgsrc, and most of them can be redefined with a simple definition like above.

If a package suggests to add `USE_TOOLS+=perl` to the package Makefile, research whether the package actually needs Perl. If it does, add `USE_TOOLS+=perl` to the package Makefile, and if it doesn't, add `TOOLS_BROKEN+=perl`.

#### 8.4.6. Reject packages for which pkglint reports errors

Using pkglint as part of the regular build process is mostly a waste of time. If you want to fix some of the warnings, just run pkglint recursively on the whole pkgsrc tree. This will take a few minutes (up to 10), which is much faster than a complete bulk build.

#### 8.4.7. Reject packages that contain forbidden strings

To ensure that the binary packages don't contain references to the build directory, there is already `CHECK_WRKREF`. If that variable includes the item `extra`, it is possible to define additional patterns that must not appear in any installed file. This is specified in `mk.conf`.

```
CHECK_WRKREF=            extra
CHECK_WRKREF_EXTRA_DIRS+= /usr/local
CHECK_WRKREF_EXTRA_DIRS+= /usr/pkg
CHECK_WRKREF_EXTRA_DIRS+= @[A-Z][A-Z]*@
```

The above patterns will probably generate many false positives, therefore the results need to be taken with a grain of salt.

#### 8.4.8. Reject packages whose self-test fails

To run the test suites that come with each package, add this line to `mk.conf`.

```
PKGSRC_RUN_TEST=        yes
```

Be prepared that even the most basic packages fail this test. When doing a bulk build with this, it will often abort in the early phase where the packages are scanned for their dependencies since there are cyclic dependencies. There is still a lot to do in this area.

#### 8.4.9. Reject packages that use undefined shell variables

To catch typos in the shell snippets from the Makefile fragments, add the `-u` flag to most of the commands by adding this line to `mk.conf`.

```
RUN=    @set -eu;
```

After that, ensure that none of the bulk build log files (even those for successfully built packages) contains the string `parameter not set` or whatever error message the command `sh -ceu '$undefined'` outputs.

See `mk/misc/common.mk` for the existing definition.

#### 8.4.10. Turn off verbose logging

The build logs of a package are often quite long. This allows error messages or other interesting details to hide between the noise. To make the actual error message stand out more, add these lines to `mk.conf`.

```
GNU_CONFIGURE_QUIET=    yes
MAKE_FLAGS+=            -s
```

The `-s` option works for both GNU Make and BSD Make. On exotic platforms with their own make, it may be a little different.

## 8.5. Creating a multiple CD-ROM packages collection

After your pkgsrc bulk-build has completed, you may wish to create a CD-ROM set of the resulting binary packages to assist in installing packages on other machines. The `pkgtools/cdpack` package provides a simple tool for creating the ISO 9660 images. `cdpack` arranges the packages on the CD-ROMs in a way that keeps all the dependencies for a given package on the same CD as that package.

### 8.5.1. Example of cdpack

Complete documentation for `cdpack` is found in the `cdpack(1)` man page. The following short example assumes that the binary packages are left in `/usr/pkgsrc/packages/All` and that sufficient disk space exists in `/u2` to hold the ISO 9660 images.

```
# mkdir /u2/images
# pkg_add /usr/pkgsrc/packages/All/cdpack
# cdpack /usr/pkgsrc/packages/All /u2/images
```

If you wish to include a common set of files (`COPYRIGHT`, `README`, etc.) on each CD in the collection, then you need to create a directory which contains these files, e.g.:

```
# mkdir /tmp/common
# echo "This is a README" > /tmp/common/README
# echo "Another file" > /tmp/common/COPYING
# mkdir /tmp/common/bin
# echo "#!/bin/sh" > /tmp/common/bin/myscript
# echo "echo Hello world" >> /tmp/common/bin/myscript
# chmod 755 /tmp/common/bin/myscript
```

Now create the images:

*Chapter 8. Creating binary packages for everything in pkgsrc (bulk builds)*

```
# cdpack -x /tmp/common /usr/pkgsrc/packages/All /u2/images
```

Each image will contain `README`, `COPYING`, and `bin/myscript` in their root directories.

## Chapter 9.

# *Directory layout of the installed files*

---

The files that are installed by `pkgsrc` are organized in a way that is similar to what you find in the `/usr` directory of the base system. But some details are different. This is because `pkgsrc` initially came from FreeBSD and had adopted its file system hierarchy. Later it was largely influenced by NetBSD. But no matter which operating system you are using `pkgsrc` with, you can expect the same layout for `pkgsrc`.

There are mainly four root directories for `pkgsrc`, which are all configurable in the `bootstrap/bootstrap` script. When `pkgsrc` has been installed as root, the default locations are:

```
LOCALBASE=          /usr/pkg
PKG_SYSCONFBASE=    /usr/pkg/etc
VARBASE=            /var
PKG_DBDIR=          /usr/pkg/pkgdb
```

In unprivileged mode (when `pkgsrc` has been installed as any other user), the default locations are:

```
LOCALBASE=          ${HOME}/pkg
PKG_SYSCONFBASE=    ${HOME}/pkg/etc
VARBASE=            ${HOME}/pkg/var
PKG_DBDIR=          ${HOME}/pkg/pkgdb
```

What these four directories are for, and what they look like is explained below.

- `LOCALBASE` corresponds to the `/usr` directory in the base system. It is the “main” directory where the files are installed and contains the well-known subdirectories like `bin`, `include`, `lib`, `share` and `sbin`.
- `VARBASE` corresponds to `/var` in the base system. Some programs (especially games, network daemons) need write access to it during normal operation.
- `PKG_SYSCONFDIR` corresponds to `/etc` in the base system. It contains configuration files of the packages, as well as `pkgsrc`'s `mk.conf` itself.

### 9.1. File system layout in `${LOCALBASE}`

The following directories exist in a typical `pkgsrc` installation in `${LOCALBASE}`.

`bin`

Contains executable programs that are intended to be directly used by the end user.

`emul`

Contains files for the emulation layers of various other operating systems, especially for NetBSD.

`etc` (the usual location of `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`)

Contains the configuration files.

`include`

Contains headers for the C and C++ programming languages.

`info`

Contains GNU info files of various packages.

`lib`

Contains shared and static libraries.

`libdata`

Contains data files that don't change after installation. Other data files belong into `${VARBASE}`.

`libexec`

Contains programs that are not intended to be used by end users, such as helper programs or network daemons.

`libexec/cgi-bin`

Contains programs that are intended to be executed as CGI scripts by a web server.

`man` (the usual value of `${PKGMANDIR}`)

Contains brief documentation in form of manual pages.

`sbin`

Contains programs that are intended to be used only by the super-user.

`share`

Contains platform-independent data files that don't change after installation.

`share/doc`

Contains documentation files provided by the packages.

`share/examples`

Contains example files provided by the packages. Among others, the original configuration files are saved here and copied to `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}` during installation.

`share/examples/rc.d`

Contains the original files for rc.d scripts.

`var` (the usual location of `#{VARBASE}`)

Contains files that may be modified after installation.

## 9.2. File system layout in `#{VARBASE}`

`db/pkg` (the usual location of `#{PKG_DBDIR}`)

Contains information about the currently installed packages.

`games`

Contains highscore files.

`log`

Contains log files.

`run`

Contains informational files about daemons that are currently running.

## Chapter 10.

# *Frequently Asked Questions*

---

This section contains hints, tips & tricks on special things in pkgsrc that we didn't find a better place for in the previous chapters, and it contains items for both pkgsrc users and developers.

### 10.1. Are there any mailing lists for pkg-related discussion?

The following mailing lists may be of interest to pkgsrc users:

- pkgsrc-users (<http://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-users>): This is a general purpose list for most issues regarding pkgsrc, regardless of platform, e.g. soliciting user help for pkgsrc configuration, unexpected build failures, using particular packages, upgrading pkgsrc installations, questions regarding the pkgsrc release branches, etc. General announcements or proposals for changes that impact the pkgsrc user community, e.g. major infrastructure changes, new features, package removals, etc., may also be posted.
- pkgsrc-bulk (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-bulk>): A list where the results of pkgsrc bulk builds are sent and discussed.
- pkgsrc-changes (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-changes>): This list is for those who are interested in getting a commit message for every change committed to pkgsrc. It is also available in digest form, meaning one daily message containing all commit messages for changes to the package source tree in that 24 hour period.

To subscribe, do:

```
% echo subscribe listname | mail majordomo@NetBSD.org
```

Archives for all these mailing lists are available from <https://mail-index.NetBSD.org/>.

### 10.2. Utilities for package management (pkgtools)

The directory `pkgsrc/pkgtools` contains a number of useful utilities for both users and developers of pkgsrc. This section attempts only to make the reader aware of some of the utilities and when they might be useful, and not to duplicate the documentation that comes with each package.

Utilities used by pkgsrc (automatically installed when needed):

- `pkgtools/x11-links`: Symlinks for use by `buildlink`.

OS tool augmentation (automatically installed when needed):

- `pkgtools/digest`: Calculates various kinds of checksums (including SHA3).

- `pkgtools/libnbcompat`: Compatibility library for `pkgsrc` tools.
- `pkgtools/mtree`: Installed on non-BSD systems due to lack of native `mtree`.
- `pkgtools/pkg_install`: Up-to-date replacement for `/usr/sbin/pkg_install`, or for use on operating systems where `pkg_install` is not present.

Utilities used by `pkgsrc` (not automatically installed):

- `pkgtools/pkg_tarup`: Create a binary package from an already-installed package. Used by **make replace** to save the old package.
- `pkgtools/dfdisk`: Adds extra functionality to `pkgsrc`, allowing it to fetch distfiles from multiple locations. It currently supports the following methods: multiple CD-ROMs and network FTP/HTTP connections.
- `devel/cpuflags`: Determine the best compiler flags to optimise code for your current CPU and compiler.

Utilities for keeping track of installed packages, being up to date, etc:

- `pkgtools/pkgin`: A package update tool similar to `apt(1)`. Download, install, and upgrade binary packages easily.
- `pkgtools/pkg_chk`: Reports on packages whose installed versions do not match the latest `pkgsrc` entries.
- `pkgtools/pkgdep`: Makes dependency graphs of packages, to aid in choosing a strategy for updating.
- `pkgtools/pkgdepgraph`: Makes graphs from the output of `pkgtools/pkgdep` (uses `graphviz`).
- `pkgtools/pkglint`: The `pkglint(1)` program checks a `pkgsrc` entry for errors.
- `pkgtools/lintpkgsrc`: The `lintpkgsrc(1)` program does various checks on the complete `pkgsrc` system.
- `pkgtools/pkgsurvey`: Report what packages you have installed.

Utilities for people maintaining or creating individual packages:

- `pkgtools/pkgdiff`: Automate making and maintaining patches for a package (includes `pkgdiff`, `pkgvi`, `mkpatches`, etc.).
- `pkgtools/url2pkg`: Aids in converting to `pkgsrc`.

Utilities for people maintaining `pkgsrc` (or: more obscure `pkg` utilities)

- `pkgtools/pkg_comp`: Build packages in a chrooted area.
- `pkgtools/libkver`: Spoof kernel version for chrooted cross builds.

### 10.3. How to use `pkgsrc` as non-root

To install packages from source as a non-root user, download `pkgsrc` as described in Chapter 3, `cd` into that directory and run the command `./bootstrap/bootstrap --unprivileged`.

This will install the binary part of `pkgsrc` to `~/pkg` and put the `pkgsrc` configuration `mk.conf` into `~/pkg/etc`.

For more details, see `mk/unprivileged.mk`.

## 10.4. How to resume transfers when fetching distfiles?

By default, resuming transfers in `pkgsrc` is disabled, but you can enable this feature by adding the option `PKG_RESUME_TRANSFERS=YES` into `mk.conf`. If, during a fetch step, an incomplete distfile is found, `pkgsrc` will try to resume it.

You can also use a different program than the platform default program by changing the `FETCH_USING` variable. You can specify the program by using `ftp`, `fetch`, `wget` or `curl`. Alternatively, fetching can be disabled by using the value `manual`. A value of `custom` disables the system defaults and dependency tracking for the fetch program. In that case you have to provide `FETCH_CMD`, `FETCH_BEFORE_ARGS`, `FETCH_RESUME_ARGS`, `FETCH_OUTPUT_ARGS`, `FETCH_AFTER_ARGS`.

For example, if you want to use `wget` to download, you'll have to use something like:

```
FETCH_USING=    wget
```

## 10.5. How can I install/use modular X.org from pkgsrc?

If you want to use modular X.org from `pkgsrc` instead of your system's own X11 (`/usr/X11R6`, `/usr/openwin`, ...) you will have to add the following line into `mk.conf`:

```
X11_TYPE=modular
```

## 10.6. How to fetch files from behind a firewall

If you are sitting behind a firewall which does not allow direct connections to Internet hosts (i.e. non-NAT), you may specify the relevant proxy hosts. This is done using an environment variable in the form of a URL, e.g. in Amdahl, the machine "orpheus.amdahl.com" is one of the firewalls, and it uses port 80 as the proxy port number. So the proxy environment variables are:

```
ftp_proxy=ftp://orpheus.amdahl.com:80/
http_proxy=http://orpheus.amdahl.com:80/
```

## 10.7. How to fetch files from HTTPS sites

Some fetch tools are not prepared to support HTTPS by default (for example, the one in NetBSD 6.0), or the one installed by the `pkgsrc` bootstrap (to avoid an `openssl` dependency that low in the dependency graph).

Usually you won't notice, because distribution files are mirrored weekly to "ftp.NetBSD.org", but that might not be often enough if you are following `pkgsrc-current`. In that case, set `FETCH_USING` in your

`mk.conf` file to “curl” or “wget”, which are both compiled with HTTPS support by default. Of course, these tools need to be installed before you can use them this way.

## 10.8. How do I tell make fetch to do passive FTP?

This depends on which utility is used to retrieve distfiles. From `bsd.pkg.mk`, `FETCH_CMD` is assigned the first available command from the following list:

- `${LOCALBASE}/bin/ftp`
- `/usr/bin/ftp`

On a default NetBSD installation, this will be `/usr/bin/ftp`, which automatically tries passive connections first, and falls back to active connections if the server refuses to do passive. For the other tools, add the following to your `mk.conf` file: `PASSIVE_FETCH=1`.

Having that option present will prevent `/usr/bin/ftp` from falling back to active transfers.

## 10.9. How to fetch all distfiles at once

You would like to download all the distfiles in a single batch from work or university, where you can't run a **make fetch**. There is an archive of distfiles on [ftp.NetBSD.org](http://ftp.NetBSD.org) ([ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/](http://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/)), but downloading the entire directory may not be appropriate.

The answer here is to do a **make fetch-list** in `/usr/pkgsrc` or one of its subdirectories, carry the resulting list to your machine at work/school and use it there. If you don't have a NetBSD-compatible `ftp(1)` (like `tnftp`) at work, don't forget to set `FETCH_CMD` to something that fetches a URL:

At home:

```
% cd /usr/pkgsrc
% make fetch-list FETCH_CMD=wget DISTDIR=/tmp/distfiles >/tmp/fetch.sh
% scp /tmp/fetch.sh work:/tmp
```

At work:

```
% sh /tmp/fetch.sh
```

then tar up `/tmp/distfiles` and take it home.

If you have a machine running NetBSD, and you want to get *all* distfiles (even ones that aren't for your machine architecture), you can do so by using the above-mentioned **make fetch-list** approach, or fetch the distfiles directly by running:

```
% make mirror-distfiles
```

If you even decide to ignore `NO_{SRC,BIN}_ON_{FTP,CDROM}`, then you can get everything by running:

```
% make fetch NO_SKIP=yes
```

## 10.10. What does “Don’t know how to make /usr/share/tmac/tmac.andoc” mean?

When compiling the `pkgtools/pkg_install` package, you get the error from `make` that it doesn’t know how to make `/usr/share/tmac/tmac.andoc`? This indicates that you don’t have installed the “text” set (`nroff`, ...) from the NetBSD base distribution on your machine. It is recommended to do that to format man pages.

In the case of the `pkgtools/pkg_install` package, you can get away with setting `NOMAN=YES` either in the environment or in `mk.conf`.

## 10.11. What does “Could not find `bsd.own.mk`” mean?

You didn’t install the compiler set, `comp.tgz`, when you installed your NetBSD machine. Please get and install it, by extracting it in `/`:

```
# cd /
# tar --unlink -zxvpf ../comp.tgz
```

`comp.tgz` is part of every NetBSD release. Get the one that corresponds to your release (determine via `uname -r`).

## 10.12. Using ‘`sudo`’ or ‘`priv`’ with `pkgsrc`

When installing packages as non-root user and using the just-in-time `su(1)` feature of `pkgsrc`, it can become annoying to type in the root password for each required package installed. To avoid this, the `sudo` package can be used, which does password caching over a limited time. To use it, install **`sudo`** or **`priv`** (either as binary package, from `security/priv`, or `security/sudo`) and then put the following into your `mk.conf`, somewhere *after* the definition of the `LOCALBASE` variable:

```
.if exists(${LOCALBASE}/bin/sudo)
SU_CMD=      ${LOCALBASE}/bin/sudo -E /bin/sh -c
.endif
```

Note the `-E` flag; that tells **`sudo`** to preserve the environment. Without this, the `bin-install` target will fail when building a package with a non-default python version.

## 10.13. How do I change the location of configuration files?

As the system administrator, you can choose where configuration files are installed. The default settings make all these files go into `${PREFIX}/etc` or some of its subdirectories; this may be suboptimal depending on your expectations (e.g., a read-only, NFS-exported `PREFIX` with a need of per-machine configuration of the provided packages).

In order to change the defaults, you can modify the `PKG_SYSCONFBASE` variable (in `mk.conf`) to point to your preferred configuration directory; some common examples include `/etc` or `/etc/pkg`.

Furthermore, you can change this value on a per-package basis by setting the `PKG_SYSCONFDIR.${PKG_SYSCONFVAR}` variable. `PKG_SYSCONFVAR`'s value usually matches the name of the package you would like to modify, that is, the contents of `PKGBASE`.

Note that after changing these settings, you must rebuild and reinstall any affected packages.

## 10.14. Automated security checks

Please be aware that there can often be bugs in third-party software, and some of these bugs can leave a machine vulnerable to exploitation by attackers. In an effort to lessen the exposure, the NetBSD packages team maintains a database of known-exploits to packages which have at one time been included in `pkgsrc`. The database can be downloaded automatically, and a security audit of all packages installed on a system can take place. To do this, refer to the following two tools (installed as part of the `pkgtools/pkg_install` package):

1. **pkg\_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities**, an easy way to download a list of the security vulnerabilities information. This list is kept up to date by the `pkgsrc` security team, and is distributed from the NetBSD ftp server:

`https://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/NetBSD/packages/vulns/pkg-vulnerabilities`

2. **pkg\_admin audit**, an easy way to audit the current machine, checking each known vulnerability. If a vulnerable package is installed, it will be shown by output to `stdout`, including a description of the type of vulnerability, and a URL containing more information.

Use of these tools is strongly recommended! See Section 5.1.6 for instructions on how to automate checking and reporting.

If this database is installed, `pkgsrc` builds will use it to perform a security check before building any package.

## 10.15. Why do some packages ignore my CFLAGS?

When you add your own preferences to the `CFLAGS` variable in your `mk.conf`, these flags are passed in environment variables to the `./configure` scripts and to `make(1)`. Some package authors ignore the `CFLAGS` from the environment variable by overriding them in the `Makefiles` of their package.

Currently there is no solution to this problem. If you really need the package to use your `CFLAGS` you should run **make patch** in the package directory and then inspect any `Makefile` and `Makefile.in` for whether they define `CFLAGS` explicitly. Usually you can remove these lines. But be aware that some “smart” programmers write so bad code that it only works for the specific combination of `CFLAGS` they have chosen.

To find out where the `CFLAGS` are ignored, add the following lines to `mk.conf`:

```
CPPFLAGS+=          -Dpkgsrc___CPPFLAGS
CFLAGS+=            -Dpkgsrc___CFLAGS
CXXFLAGS+=         -Dpkgsrc___CXXFLAGS
```

Then run **bmake show-all-configure show-all-build** to see whether the above flags are passed to the actual build commands in general.

To find out whether the flags are passed to individual compiler commands, have a look at the file `work/.work.log`. In most cases, the flags from the original command lines (the lines starting with `[*]`) are passed unmodified to the actual compiler (the lines starting with `<.>`). If the flag is missing from the actual compiler command, it must have been removed by the `pkgsrc` compiler wrappers.

## 10.16. A package does not build. What shall I do?

1. Make sure that your copy of `pkgsrc` is consistent. A case that occurs often is that people only update `pkgsrc` in parts, because of performance reasons. Since `pkgsrc` is one large system, not a collection of many small systems, there are sometimes changes that only work when the whole `pkgsrc` tree is updated.
2. Make sure that you don't have any CVS conflicts. Search for "`<<<<<<`" or "`>>>>>>`" in all your `pkgsrc` files.
3. Make sure that you don't have old copies of the packages extracted. Run **make clean clean-depends** to verify this.
4. If you are a package developer who wants to invest some work, have a look at Chapter 21.
5. If the problem still exists, write a mail to the `pkgsrc-users` mailing list.

## 10.17. What does "Makefile appears to contain unresolved cvs/rcs/??? merge conflicts" mean?

You have modified a file from `pkgsrc`, and someone else has modified that same file afterwards in the CVS repository. Both changes are in the same region of the file, so when you updated `pkgsrc`, the `cvs` command marked the conflicting changes in the file. Because of these markers, the file is no longer a valid `Makefile`.

Have a look at that file, and if you don't need your local changes anymore, you can remove that file and run **cvs -q update -dP** in that directory to download the current version.

## **II. The pkgsrc developer's guide**

This part of the book deals with creating and modifying packages. It starts with a "HOWTO"-like guide on creating a new package. The remaining chapters are more like a reference manual for pkgsrc.

# Chapter 11.

## *Getting help*

---

To get help when developing pkgsrc, the definitive source is this document, the pkgsrc guide. If you don't find anything here, there are alternatives:

- The built-in pkgsrc help, which is available after bootstrapping pkgsrc. Run **bmake help topic=...** to get help for any topic, such as a variable name like `BUILD_DEFS`, a make target like **do-build**, a missing C or C++ function like **strcasecmp** or any other topic.

The available help topics are listed in Appendix E.

- To see the value of a single variable, run **bmake show-var VARNAME=x**.
- To see the values of the most common variables, run **bmake show-all**. These variables are grouped by topic. To see the variables for a single topic, run **bmake show-all-topic**, for example **bmake show-all-fetch**.
- The tech-pkg mailing list, to which you can subscribe (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/#tech-pkg>) and then ask your questions (<mailto:tech-pkg@NetBSD.org>).
- The #pkgsrc IRC channel, which is accessible via a web browser (<https://web.libera.chat/>) or by using a specialized chat program such as XChat (<http://xchat.org/>). Pick any user name and join the channel #pkgsrc.

## Chapter 12.

# *Package components - files, directories and contents*

---

Whenever you're preparing a package, there are a number of files involved which are described in the following sections.

### 12.1. Makefile

Building, installation and creation of a binary package are all controlled by the package's `Makefile`. The `Makefile` describes various things about a package, for example from where to get it, how to configure, build, and install it.

A package `Makefile` contains several sections that describe the package.

In the first section there are the following variables, which should appear exactly in the order given here. The order and grouping of the variables is mostly historical and has no further meaning.

- `DISTNAME` is the basename of the distribution file to be downloaded from the package's website.
- `PKGNAME` is the name of the package, as used by `pkgsrc`. You need to provide it if `DISTNAME` (which is the default) is not a good name for the package in `pkgsrc` or `DISTNAME` is not provided (no distribution file is required). Usually it is the `pkgsrc` directory name together with the version number. It must match the regular expression `^[A-Za-z0-9][A-Za-z0-9-_.+]*$`, that is, it starts with a letter or digit, and contains only letters, digits, dashes, underscores, dots and plus signs. New packages should have entirely lower-case names, with the exception of some that must follow pre-existing conventions (e.g. R packages begin with `R-`). You can use the `:t1` variable modifier to lower-case the package name.
- `CATEGORIES` is a list of categories which the package fits in. You can choose any of the top-level directories of `pkgsrc` for it.

Currently the following values are available for `CATEGORIES`. If more than one is used, they need to be separated by spaces:

archivers	cross	geography	meta-pkgs	security
audio	databases	graphics	misc	shells
benchmarks	devel	ham	multimedia	sysutils
biology	editors	inputmethod	net	textproc
cad	emulators	lang	news	time
chat	finance	mail	parallel	wm
comms	fonts	math	pkgtools	www
converters	games	mbone	print	x11

- `MASTER_SITES`, `DYNAMIC_MASTER_SITES`, `DIST_SUBDIR`, `EXTRACT_SUFX` and `DISTFILES` are discussed in detail in Section 13.5.

The second section contains information about separately downloaded patches, if any.

- `PATCHFILES`: Name(s) of additional files that contain distribution patches. There is no default. `pkgsrc` will look for them at `PATCH_SITES`. They will automatically be uncompressed before patching if the names end with `.gz` or `.z`.
- `PATCH_SITES`: Primary location(s) for distribution patch files (see `PATCHFILES` above) if not found locally.
- `PATCH_DIST_STRIP`: an argument to `patch(1)` that sets the pathname strip count to help find the correct files to patch. It defaults to `-p0`.

The third section contains the following variables.

- `MAINTAINER` is the email address of the person who is currently responsible for this package. In theory, the maintainer will be aware of upstream release, keep it updated, and generally resolve problems. Others contemplating significant changes should ask the maintainer for advice or review of a proposed change. This is not necessary for micro updates, bug fixes, `pkgsrc`-wide changes affecting many packages, and other things expected to be uncontroversial. It goes with this "should ask" that the maintainer should respond to inquiries reasonably promptly (most of the time), and either approve changes or provide reasons why not. Typically, when packaging a new program, set `MAINTAINER` to yourself. If you don't intend to maintain the package (especially if you feel you have no special insight), set it to `<pkgsrc-users@NetBSD.org>`. This special value is a code point indicating that there is no maintainer, but the variable is mandatory, absent `OWNER`.
- `OWNER` can be used instead of `MAINTAINER` in relatively rare circumstances when the package is such that modifying it is riskier than normal. This is a stronger form of being the maintainer, with an expectation that others will ask for almost all changes, except revbumps and accommodating structural changes. Someone who becomes `OWNER` has a strong obligation to keep the package very well maintained, to answer queries promptly and to be a steward of the package on behalf of users. In this case, `MAINTAINER` should be omitted.

Because of the friction that `OWNER` adds, PMC may downgrade it to `MAINTAINER` at any time.

- `HOMEPAGE` is a URL where users can find more information about the package.
- `COMMENT` is a one-line description of the package (should not include the package name).
- `LICENSE` indicates the license(s) applicable for the package. See Section 21.1.3 for further details.

Other variables that affect the build:

- `WRKSRCDIR`: The directory where the interesting distribution files of the package are found. The default is `/${WRKDIR}/${DISTNAME}`, which works for most packages.

If a package doesn't create a subdirectory for itself (most GNU software does, for instance), but extracts itself in the current directory, you should set `WRKSRCDIR=${WRKDIR}`.

If a package doesn't create a subdirectory with the name of `DISTNAME` but some different name, set `WRKSRCDIR` to point to the proper name in `/${WRKDIR}`, for example `WRKSRCDIR=${WRKDIR}/${DISTNAME}/unix`. See `lang/tcl` and `x11/tk` for other examples.

The name of the working directory created by `pkgsrc` is taken from the `WRKDIR_BASENAME` variable. By default, its value is `work`. If you want to use the same `pkgsrc` tree for building different kinds of binary packages, you can change the variable according to your needs. Two other variables handle common cases of setting `WRKDIR_BASENAME` individually. If `OBJHOSTNAME` is defined in `mk.conf`, the first component of the host's name is attached to the directory name. If `OBJMACHINE` is defined, the platform name is attached, which might look like `work.i386` or `work.sparc`.

Please pay attention to the following gotchas:

- Add `MANCOMPRESSED` if man pages are installed in compressed form by the package. For packages using BSD-style makefiles which honor `MANZ`, there is `MANCOMPRESSED_IF_MANZ`.
- Replace `/usr/local` with “`${PREFIX}`” in all files (see patches, below).
- If the package installs any info files, see Section 21.6.8.

## 12.2. distinfo

The `distinfo` file contains the message digest, or checksum, of each distfile needed for the package. This ensures that the distfiles retrieved from the Internet have not been corrupted during transfer or altered by a malign force to introduce a security hole. To provide maximum security, all distfiles are protected using two different message digest algorithms (BLAKE2s and SHA512), as well as the file size.

The `distinfo` file also contains the checksums for all the patches found in the `patches` directory (see Section 12.3). These checksums ensure that patches are only applied intentionally and that they don't accidentally change, e.g. when merging different changes together. They also make sure that new patches are actually added to CVS and old ones are removed. To see whether the patches and the `distinfo` file match, run `pkglint` after changing the patches.

To regenerate the `distinfo` file, use the `make distinfo` command.

Some packages have different sets of distfiles depending on the platform, for example `lang/openjdk8`. These are kept in the same `distinfo` file and care should be taken when upgrading such a package to ensure distfile information is not lost.

## 12.3. patches/\*

Some packages don't work out-of-the box on the various platforms that are supported by `pkgsrc`. These packages need to be patched to make them work. The patch files can be found in the `patches/` directory.

In the `patch` phase, these patches are applied to the files in `WRKSRC` directory after extracting them, in alphabetic order.

### 12.3.1. Structure of a single patch file

The `patch-*` files should be in `diff -bu` format, and apply without a fuzz to avoid problems. (To force patches to apply with fuzz you can set `PATCH_FUZZ_FACTOR=-F2`). Furthermore, each patch should

contain only changes for a single file, and no file should be patched by more than one patch file. This helps to keep future modifications simple.

Each patch file is structured as follows: In the first line, there is the RCS Id of the patch itself. The second line should be empty for aesthetic reasons. After that, there should be a comment for each change that the patch does. There are a number of standard cases:

- Patches for commonly known vulnerabilities should mention the vulnerability ID (CAN, CVE).
- Patches that change source code should mention the platform and other environment (for example, the compiler) that the patch is needed for.

The patch should be commented so that any developer who knows the code of the application can make some use of the patch. Special care should be taken for the upstream developers, since we generally want that they accept our patches, so we have less work in the future.

### 12.3.2. Creating patch files

One important thing to mention is to pay attention that no RCS IDs get stored in the patch files, as these will cause problems when later checked into the NetBSD CVS tree. Use the **pkgdiff** command from the `pkgtools/pkgdiff` package to avoid these problems.

For even more automation, we recommend using **mkpatches** from the same package to make a whole set of patches. You just have to back up files before you edit them to `filename.orig`, e.g., with **cp -p filename filename.orig** or, easier, by using **pkgvi** again from the same package. If you upgrade a package this way, you can easily compare the new set of patches with the previously existing one with **patchdiff**. The files in `patches` are replaced by new files, so carefully check if you want to take all the changes.

When you have finished a package, remember to generate the checksums for the patch files by using the **make makepatchsum** command, see Section 12.2.

When adding a patch that corrects a problem in the distfile (rather than e.g. enforcing `pkgsrc`'s view of where man pages should go), send the patch as a bug report to the maintainer. This benefits non-`pkgsrc` users of the package, and usually makes it possible to remove the patch in future version.

The file names of the patch files are usually of the form `patch-path_to_file_with_underscores.c`. Many packages still use the previous convention `patch-[a-z][a-z]`, but new patches should be of the form containing the filename. **mkpatches** included in `pkgtools/pkgdiff` takes care of the name automatically.

When updating pre-existing patch files, if a file uses the old `patch-[a-z][a-z]` convention, it's best not to change it to the new form, as that will just cause churn that makes it harder to track changes to patching over time. Similarly, if a patch now applies at different line offsets, but still applies cleanly as-is, there's no need to update it, as that also unnecessarily complicates the patch history.

### 12.3.3. Sources where the patch files come from

If you want to share patches between multiple packages in `pkgsrc`, e.g. because they use the same distfiles, set `PATCHDIR` to the path where the patch files can be found, e.g.:

```
PATCHDIR=      ../../editors/xemacs/patches
```

Patch files that are distributed by the author or other maintainers can be listed in `PATCHFILES`.

If it is desired to store any patches that should not be committed into `pkgsrc`, they can be kept outside the `pkgsrc` tree in the `$LOCALPATCHES` directory. The directory tree there is expected to have the same “category/package” structure as `pkgsrc`, and patches are expected to be stored inside these dirs (also known as `$LOCALPATCHES/$PKGPATH`). For example, if you want to keep a private patch for `pkgsrc/graphics/png`, keep it in `$LOCALPATCHES/graphics/png/mypatch`. All files in the named directory are expected to be patch files, and *they are applied after pkgsrc patches are applied*.

### 12.3.4. Patching guidelines

When fixing a portability issue in the code do not use preprocessor magic to check for the current operating system nor platform. Doing so hurts portability to other platforms because the OS-specific details are not abstracted appropriately.

The general rule to follow is: instead of checking for the operating system the application is being built on, check for the specific *features* you need. For example, instead of assuming that `kqueue` is available under NetBSD and using the `__NetBSD__` macro to conditionalize `kqueue` support, add a check that detects `kqueue` itself — yes, this generally involves patching the **configure** script. There is absolutely nothing that prevents some OSes from adopting interfaces from other OSes (e.g. Linux implementing `kqueue`), something that the above checks cannot take into account.

Of course, checking for features generally involves more work on the developer’s side, but the resulting changes are cleaner and there are chances they will work on many other platforms. Not to mention that there are higher chances of being later integrated into the mainstream sources. Remember: *It doesn’t work unless it is right!*

Some typical examples:

**Table 12-1. Patching examples**

Where	Incorrect	Correct
configure script	<pre>case \${target_os} in netbsd*) have_kvm=yes ;; *)      have_kvm=no  ;; esac</pre>	<pre>AC_CHECK_LIB(kvm, kvm_open, have_kvm=yes)</pre>
C source file	<pre>#if defined(__NetBSD__) # include &lt;sys/event.h&gt; #endif</pre>	<pre>#if defined(HAVE_SYS_EVENT_H) # include &lt;sys/event.h&gt; #endif</pre>
C source file	<pre>int monitor_file(...) { #if defined(__NetBSD__) int fd = kqueue(); ... #else ... #endif }</pre>	<pre>int monitor_file(...) { #if defined(HAVE_KQUEUE) int fd = kqueue(); ... #else ... #endif }</pre>

### 12.3.5. Feedback to the author

Always, always, **always** feed back any *portability fixes* or improvements you do to a package to the mainstream developers. This is the only way to get their attention on portability issues and to ensure that future versions can be built out-of-the box on NetBSD. Furthermore, any user that gets newer distfiles will get the fixes straight from the packaged code.

This generally involves cleaning up the patches (because sometimes the patches that are added to pkgsrc are quick hacks), filing bug reports in the appropriate trackers for the projects and working with the mainstream authors to accept your changes. It is *extremely important* that you do it so that the packages in pkgsrc are kept simple and thus further changes can be done without much hassle.

When you have done this, please add a URL to the upstream bug report to the patch comment.

Support the idea of free software!

## 12.4. Other mandatory files

DESCR

A multi-line description of the piece of software. This should include any credits where they are due. Please bear in mind that others do not share your sense of humour (or spelling idiosyncrasies), and that others will read everything that you write here.

PLIST

This file governs the files that are installed on your system: all the binaries, manual pages, etc. There are other directives which may be entered in this file, to control the creation and deletion of directories, and the location of inserted files. See Chapter 19 for more information.

## 12.5. Optional files

### 12.5.1. Files affecting the binary package

INSTALL

This shell script is invoked twice by `pkg_add(1)`. First time after package extraction and before files are moved in place, the second time after the files to install are moved in place. This can be used to do any custom procedures not possible with `@exec` commands in `PLIST`. See `pkg_add(1)` and `pkg_create(1)` for more information. See also Section 20.1. Please note that you can modify variables in it easily by using `FILES_SUBST` in the package's `Makefile`:

```
FILES_SUBST+= SOMEVAR="somevalue"
```

replaces `"@SOMEVAR@"` with `"somevalue"` in the `INSTALL`. By default, substitution is performed for `PREFIX`, `LOCALBASE`, `X11BASE`, `VARBASE`, and a few others, type **make help** **topic=FILES\_SUBST** for a complete list.

#### DEINSTALL

This script is executed before and after any files are removed. It is this script's responsibility to clean up any additional messy details around the package's installation, since all `pkg_delete` knows is how to delete the files created in the original distribution. See `pkg_delete(1)` and `pkg_create(1)` for more information. The same methods to replace variables can be used as for the `INSTALL` file.

#### MESSAGE

This file is displayed after installation of the package. While this was used often in the past, it has two problems: the display will be missed if many packages are installed at once, and the person installing the package and the one using or configuring it may be different. It should therefore be used only in exceptional circumstances where lasting negative consequences would result from someone not reading it.

MESSAGE should not be used for:

- exhortations to read the documentation
- reminders to install `rc.d` files and set variables
- anything that should be explained in the installation/configuration documentation that should come with the package

If the documentation provided by upstream needs enhancing, create e.g. `files/README.pkgsrc` and install it in the package's documentation directory.

Note that MESSAGE is shown for all operating systems and all init systems. If a MESSAGE is necessary, it should be narrowed to only those operating systems and init systems to which it applies.

Note that you can modify variables in it easily by using `MESSAGE_SUBST` in the package's `Makefile`:

```
MESSAGE_SUBST+= SOMEVAR="somevalue"
```

replaces `"${SOMEVAR}"` with "somevalue" in MESSAGE. By default, substitution is performed for `PKGNAME`, `PKGBASE`, `PREFIX`, `LOCALBASE`, `X11BASE`, `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`, `ROOT_GROUP`, and `ROOT_USER`.

You can display a different or additional files by setting the `MESSAGE_SRC` variable. Its default is `MESSAGE`, if the file exists.

#### ALTERNATIVES

This file is used by the alternatives framework. It creates, configures, and destroys generic wrappers used to run programs with similar interfaces. See `pkg_alternatives(8)` from `pkgtools/pkg_alternatives` for more information.

Each line of the file contains two filenames, first the wrapper and then the alternative provided by the package. Both paths are relative to `PREFIX`.

## 12.5.2. Files affecting the build process

`Makefile.common`

This file contains arbitrary things that could also go into a `Makefile`, but its purpose is to be used by more than one package. This file should only be used when the packages that will use the file are known in advance. For other purposes it is often better to write a `*.mk` file and give it a good name that describes what it does.

`buildlink3.mk`

This file contains the dependency information for the `buildlink3` framework (see Chapter 18).

`hacks.mk`

This file contains workarounds for compiler bugs and similar things. It is included automatically by the `pkgsrc` infrastructure, so you don't need an extra `.include` line for it.

`options.mk`

This file contains the code for the package-specific options (see Chapter 16) that can be selected by the user. If a package has only one or two options, it is equally acceptable to put the code directly into the `Makefile`.

## 12.5.3. Files affecting nothing at all

`README*`

These files do not take place in the creation of a package and thus are purely informative to the package developer.

`TODO`

This file contains things that need to be done to make the package even better.

## 12.6. `work*`

When you type `make`, the distribution files are unpacked into the directory denoted by `WRKDIR`. It can be removed by running `make clean`. Besides the sources, this directory is also used to keep various timestamp files. The directory gets *removed completely* on clean. The default is `${.CURDIR}/work` or `${.CURDIR}/work.${MACHINE_ARCH}` if `OBJMACHINE` is set.

## 12.7. `files/*`

If you have any files that you wish to be placed in the package prior to configuration or building, you can place these files here and use a `$(CP)` command in the “post-extract” target to achieve this.

If you want to share files in this way with other packages, set the `FILESDIR` variable to point to the other package's `files` directory, e.g.:

```
FILESDIR= ../../editors/xemacs/files
```

# Chapter 13.

## *The build process*

---

### 13.1. Introduction

This chapter gives a detailed description on how a package is built. Building a package is separated into different *phases* (for example `fetch`, `build`, `install`), all of which are described in the following sections. Each phase is split into so-called *stages*, which take the name of the containing phase, prefixed by one of `pre-`, `do-` or `post-`. (Examples are `pre-configure`, `post-build`.) Most of the actual work is done in the `do-*` stages.

Never override the regular targets (like `fetch`), if you have to, override the `do-*` ones instead.

The basic steps for building a program are always the same. First the program's source (*distfile*) must be brought to the local system and then extracted. After any `pkgsrc`-specific patches to compile properly are applied, the software can be configured, then built (usually by compiling), and finally the generated binaries, etc. can be put into place on the system.

To get more details about what is happening at each step, you can set the `PKG_VERBOSE` variable, or the `PATCH_DEBUG` variable if you are just interested in more details about the *patch* step.

### 13.2. Program location

Before outlining the process performed by the NetBSD package system in the next section, here's a brief discussion on where programs are installed, and which variables influence this.

The automatic variable `PREFIX` indicates where all files of the final program shall be installed. It is usually set to `LOCALBASE` (`/usr/pkg`), or `CROSSBASE` for `pkgs` in the `cross` category. The value of `PREFIX` needs to be put into the various places in the program's source where paths to these files are encoded. See Section 12.3 and Section 21.3.1 for more details.

When choosing which of these variables to use, follow the following rules:

- `PREFIX` always points to the location where the current `pkg` will be installed. When referring to a `pkg`'s own installation path, use “`${PREFIX}`”.
- `LOCALBASE` is where all `pkgs` are installed. If you need to construct a `-I` or `-L` argument to the compiler to find includes and libraries installed by another `pkg`, use “`${LOCALBASE}`”. The name `LOCALBASE` stems from FreeBSD, which installed all packages in `/usr/local`. As `pkgsrc` leaves `/usr/local` for the system administrator, this variable is a misnomer.
- `X11BASE` is where the actual X11 distribution (from `xsrc`, etc.) is installed. When looking for *standard* X11 includes (not those installed by a package), use “`${X11BASE}`”.
- X11-based packages using `imake` must set `USE_IMAKE` to be installed correctly under `LOCALBASE`.

- Within `${PREFIX}`, packages should install files according to `hier(7)`, with the exception that manual pages go into `${PREFIX}/man`, not `${PREFIX}/share/man`.

### 13.3. Directories used during the build process

When building a package, various directories are used to store source files, temporary files, `pkgsrc-internal` files, and so on. These directories are explained here.

Some of the directory variables contain relative pathnames. There are two common base directories for these relative directories: `PKGSRCDIR/PKGPATH` is used for directories that are `pkgsrc`-specific. `WRKSRC` is used for directories inside the package itself.

`PKGSRCDIR`

This is an absolute pathname that points to the `pkgsrc` root directory. Generally, you don't need it.

`PKGDIR`

This is an absolute pathname that points to the current package.

`PKGPATH`

This is a pathname relative to `PKGSRCDIR` that points to the current package. It is defined after including `bsd.prefs.mk` and can be used in makefile fragments that are used by several packages to distinguish between these packages. Other variables that would serve the same purpose are `PKGBASE` and `PKGNAME`, but these are only defined after including `bsd.pkg.mk`, which is too late.

In `mk.conf`, the `pkgsrc` user can use `PKGPATH` to tweak variables like `MAKE_JOBS` and `CFLAGS`.

`WRKDIR`

This is an absolute pathname pointing to the directory where all work takes place. The distfiles are extracted to this directory. It also contains temporary directories and log files used by the various `pkgsrc` frameworks, like *buildlink* or the *wrappers*.

`WRKSRC`

This is an absolute pathname pointing to the directory where the distfiles are extracted. It is usually a direct subdirectory of `WRKDIR`, and often it's the only directory entry that isn't hidden. This variable may be changed by a package `Makefile`.

The `CREATE_WRKDIR_SYMLINK` definition takes either the value *yes* or *no* and defaults to *no*. It indicates whether a symbolic link to the `WRKDIR` is to be created in the `pkgsrc` entry's directory. If users would like to have their `pkgsrc` trees behave in a read-only manner, then the value of `CREATE_WRKDIR_SYMLINK` should be set to *no*.

### 13.4. Running a phase

You can run a particular phase by typing `make phase`, where *phase* is the name of the phase. This will automatically run all phases that are required for this phase. The default phase is `build`, that is, when you run `make` without parameters in a package directory, the package will be built, but not installed.

## 13.5. The *fetch* phase

The first step in building a package is to fetch the distribution files (distfiles) from the sites that are providing them. This is the task of the *fetch* phase.

### 13.5.1. What to fetch and where to get it from

In simple cases, `MASTER_SITES` defines all URLs from where the distfile, whose name is derived from the `DISTNAME` variable, is fetched. The more complicated cases are described below.

The variable `DISTFILES` specifies the list of distfiles that have to be fetched. Its value defaults to `${DEFAULT_DISTFILES}` and its value is `${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFFIX}`, so that most packages don't need to define it at all. `EXTRACT_SUFFIX` is `.tar.gz` by default, but can be changed freely. Note that if your package requires additional distfiles to the default one, you cannot just append the additional filenames using the `+=` operator, but you have write for example:

```
DISTFILES=      ${DEFAULT_DISTFILES} additional-files.tar.gz
```

Each distfile is fetched from a list of sites, usually `MASTER_SITES`. If the package has multiple `DISTFILES` or multiple `PATCHFILES` from different sites, you can set `SITES.distfile` to the list of URLs where the file *distfile* (including the suffix) can be found.

```
DISTFILES=      ${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFFIX}
DISTFILES+=     foo-file.tar.gz
SITES.foo-file.tar.gz= \
https://www.somewhere.com/somehow/ \
https://www.somewhereelse.com/mirror/somehow/
```

When actually fetching the distfiles, each item from `MASTER_SITES` or `SITES.*` gets the name of each distfile appended to it, without an intermediate slash. Therefore, all site values have to end with a slash or other separator character. This allows for example to set `MASTER_SITES` to a URL of a CGI script that gets the name of the distfile as a parameter. In this case, the definition would look like:

```
MASTER_SITES=   https://www.example.com/download.cgi?file=
```

The exception to this rule are URLs starting with a dash. In that case the URL is taken as is, fetched and the result stored under the name of the distfile. You can use this style for the case when the download URL style does not match the above common case. For example, if permanent download URL is a redirector to the real download URL, or the download file name is offered by an HTTP Content-Disposition header. In the following example, `foo-1.0.0.tar.gz` will be created instead of the default `v1.0.0.tar.gz`.

```
DISTNAME=       foo-1.0.0
MASTER_SITES=   -https://www.example.com/archive/v1.0.0.tar.gz
```

There are some predefined values for `MASTER_SITES`, which can be used in packages. The names of the variables should speak for themselves.

<code>MASTER_SITE_APACHE</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_BACKUP</code>
<code>MASTER_SITE_CRATESIO</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_CYGWIN</code>
<code>MASTER_SITE_DEBIAN</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_FREEBSD</code>
<code>MASTER_SITE_FREEBSD_LOCAL</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_GENTOO</code>

```

MASTER_SITE_GITHUB          MASTER_SITE_GITLAB
MASTER_SITE_GNOME          MASTER_SITE_GNU
MASTER_SITE_GNUPG          MASTER_SITE_GNUSTEP
MASTER_SITE_HASKELL_HACKAGE MASTER_SITE_IFARCHIVE
MASTER_SITE_KDE            MASTER_SITE_MOZILLA
MASTER_SITE_MOZILLA_ALL    MASTER_SITE_MYSQL
MASTER_SITE_NETLIB         MASTER_SITE_OPENBSD
MASTER_SITE_OPENOFFICE     MASTER_SITE OSDN
MASTER_SITE_PERL_CPAN      MASTER_SITE_PGSQL
MASTER_SITE_PYPI           MASTER_SITE_RUBYGEMS
MASTER_SITE_R_CRAN         MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE
MASTER_SITE_SUNSITE        MASTER_SITE_SUSE
MASTER_SITE_TEX_CTAN       MASTER_SITE_XCONTRIB
MASTER_SITE_XEMACS         MASTER_SITE_XORG

```

Some explanations for the less self-explaining ones: `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP` contains backup sites for packages that are maintained in `ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/${DIST_SUBDIR}`.

`MASTER_SITE_LOCAL` contains local package source distributions that are maintained in `ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/LOCAL_PORTS/`.

If you choose one of these predefined sites, you may want to specify a subdirectory of that site. Since these macros may expand to more than one actual site, you *must* use the following construct to specify a subdirectory:

```

MASTER_SITES=    ${MASTER_SITE_GNU:=subdirectory/name/}
MASTER_SITES=    ${MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE:=project_name/}

```

Note the trailing slash after the subdirectory name.

## 13.5.2. How are the files fetched?

The *fetch* phase makes sure that all the distfiles exist in a local directory (`DISTDIR`, which can be set by the `pkgsrc` user). If the files do not exist, they are fetched using commands of the form

```

${FETCH_CMD} ${FETCH_BEFORE_ARGS} ${site}${file} ${FETCH_AFTER_ARGS}

```

where `${site}` varies through several possibilities in turn: first, `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE` is tried, then the sites specified in either `SITES.file` if defined, else `MASTER_SITES` or `PATCH_SITES`, as applies, then finally the value of `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`. The order of all except the first and the last can be optionally sorted by the user, via setting either `MASTER_SORT_RANDOM`, and `MASTER_SORT_AWK` or `MASTER_SORT_REGEX`.

The specific command and arguments used depend on the `FETCH_USING` parameter. The example above is for `FETCH_USING=custom`.

The distfiles mirror run by the NetBSD Foundation uses the *mirror-distfiles* target to mirror the distfiles, if they are freely distributable. Packages setting `NO_SRC_ON_FTP` (usually to “`{RESTRICTED}`”) will not have their distfiles mirrored.

## 13.6. The *checksum* phase

After the distfile(s) are fetched, their checksum is generated and compared with the checksums stored in the distinfo file. If the checksums don't match, the build is aborted. This is to ensure the same distfile is used for building, and that the distfile wasn't changed, e.g. by some malign force, deliberately changed distfiles on the master distribution site or network lossage.

## 13.7. The *extract* phase

When the distfiles are present on the local system, they need to be extracted, as they usually come in the form of some compressed archive format.

By default, all `DISTFILES` are extracted. If you only need some of them, you can set the `EXTRACT_ONLY` variable to the list of those files.

Extracting the files is usually done by a little program, `mk/extract/extract`, which already knows how to extract various archive formats, so most likely you will not need to change anything here. But if you need, the following variables may help you:

```
EXTRACT_OPTS_{BIN,LHA,PAX,RAR,TAR,ZIP,ZOO}
```

Use these variables to override the default options for an extract command, which are defined in `mk/extract/extract`.

```
EXTRACT_USING
```

This variable can be set to `bsdtar`, `gtar`, `nbtar` (which is the default value), `pax`, or an absolute pathname pointing to the command with which tar archives should be extracted. It is preferred to choose `bsdtar` over `gtar` if NetBSD's `pax-as-tar` is not good enough.

If the `extract` program doesn't serve your needs, you can also override the `EXTRACT_CMD` variable, which holds the command used for extracting the files. This command is executed in the `${WRKSRC}` directory. During execution of this command, the shell variable `extract_file` holds the absolute pathname of the file that is going to be extracted.

And if that still does not suffice, you can override the `do-extract` target in the package Makefile.

## 13.8. The *patch* phase

After extraction, all the patches named by the `PATCHFILES`, those present in the `patches` subdirectory of the package as well as in `$LOCALPATCHES/$PKGPATH` (e.g. `/usr/local/patches/graphics/png`) are applied. Patchfiles ending in `.z` or `.gz` are uncompressed before they are applied, files ending in `.orig` or `.rej` are ignored. Any special options to `patch(1)` can be handed in `PATCH_DIST_ARGS`. See Section 12.3 for more details.

By default `patch(1)` is given special arguments to make it fail if the expected text from the patch context is not found in the patched file. If that happens, fix the patch file by comparing it with the actual text in the file to be patched.

## 13.9. The *tools* phase

This is covered in Chapter 17.

## 13.10. The *wrapper* phase

This phase creates wrapper programs for the compilers and linkers. The following variables can be used to tweak the wrappers.

ECHO\_WRAPPER\_MSG

The command used to print progress messages. Does nothing by default. Set to `${ECHO}` to see the progress messages.

WRAPPER\_DEBUG

This variable can be set to `yes` (default) or `no`, depending on whether you want additional information in the wrapper log file.

WRAPPER\_UPDATE\_CACHE

This variable can be set to `yes` or `no`, depending on whether the wrapper should use its cache, which will improve the speed. The default value is `yes`, but is forced to `no` if the platform does not support it.

WRAPPER\_REORDER\_CMDS

A list of reordering commands. A reordering command has the form `reorder:l:lib1:lib2`. It ensures that that `-llib1` occurs before `-llib2`.

## 13.11. The *configure* phase

Most pieces of software need information on the header files, system calls, and library routines which are available on the platform they run on. The process of determining this information is known as configuration, and is usually automated. In most cases, a script is supplied with the distfiles, and its invocation results in generation of header files, Makefiles, etc.

If the package contains a configure script, this can be invoked by setting `HAS_CONFIGURE` to “yes”. If the configure script is a GNU autoconf script, you should set `GNU_CONFIGURE` to “yes” instead.

In the `do-configure` stage, a rough equivalent of the following command is run. See `mk/configure/configure.mk`, target `do-configure-script` for the exact definition.

```
.for dir in ${CONFIGURE_DIRS}
  cd ${WRKSRV} && cd ${dir} \
  && env ${CONFIGURE_ENV} \
    ${CONFIG_SHELL} ${CONFIGURE_SCRIPT} ${CONFIGURE_ARGS}
.endfor
```

`CONFIGURE_DIRS` (default: “.”) is a list of pathnames relative to `WRKSRV`. In each of these directories, the configure script is run with the environment `CONFIGURE_ENV` and arguments `CONFIGURE_ARGS`.

The variables `CONFIGURE_ENV`, `CONFIGURE_SCRIPT` (default: `./configure`) and `CONFIGURE_ARGS` may all be changed by the package.

If the program uses the Perl way of configuration (mainly Perl modules, but not only), i.e. a file called `Makefile.PL`, it should include `../../lang/perl5/module.mk`. To set any parameter for `Makefile.PL` use the `MAKE_PARAMS` variable (e.g., `MAKE_PARAMS+=foo=bar`)

If the program uses an `Imakefile` for configuration, the appropriate steps can be invoked by setting `USE_IMAKE` to “yes”. If you only need `xmkmf`, add it to `USE_TOOLS`. You can add variables to `xmkmf`’s environment by adding them to the `SCRIPTS_ENV` variable.

If the program uses `cmake` for configuration, the appropriate steps can be invoked by including `../../devel/cmake/build.mk`. You can add variables to `cmake`’s environment by adding them to the `CONFIGURE_ENV` variable and arguments to `cmake` by adding them to the `CMAKE_CONFIGURE_ARGS` variable. If you want to add arguments only for particular stages, you can use the `CMAKE_CONFIGURE_ARGS`, `CMAKE_BUILD_ARGS`, and `CMAKE_INSTALL_ARGS` variables. You can set the `CONFIGURE_DIRS` variable to the directories in which CMake should be run, relative to `WRKSR`. This defaults to to `“.”`.

Any package using the now-deprecated `USE_CMAKE=yes` should be converted. Essentially, replace with an include of `../../devel/cmake/build.mk`, prune creation of a build directory and settings to use it, and check/fix settings that intend to perform the build in a subdirectory.

If there is no configure step at all, set `NO_CONFIGURE` to “yes”.

## 13.12. The *build* phase

For building a package, a rough equivalent of the following code is executed; see `mk/build/build.mk`, target `do-build` for the exact definition.

```
.for dir in ${BUILD_DIRS}
    cd ${WRKSR} && cd ${dir} \
    && env ${MAKE_ENV} \
        ${MAKE_PROGRAM} ${MAKE_FLAGS} ${BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS} \
        -f ${MAKE_FILE} \
        ${BUILD_TARGET}
.endfor
```

`BUILD_DIRS` (default: `“.”`) is a list of pathnames relative to `WRKSR`. In each of these directories, `MAKE_PROGRAM` is run with the environment `MAKE_ENV` and arguments `BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS`. The variables `MAKE_ENV`, `BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS`, `MAKE_FILE` and `BUILD_TARGET` may all be changed by the package.

The default value of `MAKE_PROGRAM` is “`gmake`” if `USE_TOOLS` contains “`gmake`”, “`make`” otherwise. The default value of `MAKE_FILE` is “`Makefile`”, and `BUILD_TARGET` defaults to “`all`”.

If there is no build step at all, set `NO_BUILD` to “yes”.

## 13.13. The *test* phase

[TODO]

## 13.14. The *install* phase

Once the build stage has completed, the final step is to install the software in public directories, so users can access the programs and files.

In the *install* phase, a rough equivalent of the following code is executed; see `mk/install/install.mk`, target `do-install` for the exact definition. Additionally, before and after this code, several consistency checks are run against the files-to-be-installed, see `mk/check/*.mk` for details.

```
.for dir in ${INSTALL_DIRS}
    cd ${WRKSRC} && cd ${dir} \
    && env ${INSTALL_ENV} ${MAKE_ENV} \
        ${MAKE_PROGRAM} ${MAKE_FLAGS} ${INSTALL_MAKE_FLAGS} \
        -f ${MAKE_FILE} ${INSTALL_TARGET}
.endfor
```

The variable's meanings are analogous to the ones in the *build* phase. `INSTALL_DIRS` defaults to `BUILD_DIRS`. `INSTALL_TARGET` is “install” by default, plus “install.man” if `USE_IMAKE` is defined and `NO_INSTALL_MANPAGES` is not defined.

In the *install* phase, the following variables are useful. They are all variations of the `install(1)` command that have the owner, group and permissions preset. `INSTALL` is the plain install command. The specialized variants, together with their intended use, are:

```
INSTALL_PROGRAM_DIR
    directories that contain binaries

INSTALL_SCRIPT_DIR
    directories that contain scripts

INSTALL_LIB_DIR
    directories that contain shared and static libraries

INSTALL_DATA_DIR
    directories that contain data files

INSTALL_MAN_DIR
    directories that contain man pages

INSTALL_GAME_DIR
    directories that contain data files for games

INSTALL_PROGRAM
    binaries that can be stripped from debugging symbols

INSTALL_SCRIPT
    binaries that cannot be stripped
```

INSTALL\_GAME

game binaries

INSTALL\_LIB

shared and static libraries

INSTALL\_DATA

data files

INSTALL\_GAME\_DATA

data files for games

INSTALL\_MAN

man pages

Some other variables are:

INSTALL\_UNSTRIPPED

If set to `yes`, do not run `strip(1)` when installing binaries. Any debugging sections and symbols present in binaries will be preserved.

INSTALLATION\_DIRS

A list of directories relative to `PREFIX` that are created by `pkgsrc` at the beginning of the *install* phase. The package is supposed to create all needed directories itself before installing files to it and list all other directories here.

In the rare cases that a package shouldn't install anything, set `NO_INSTALL` to "yes". This is mostly relevant for packages in the `regress` category.

## 13.15. The *package* phase

Once the install stage has completed, a binary package of the installed files can be built. These binary packages can be used for quick installation without previous compilation, e.g. by the **make bin-install** or by using **pkg\_add**.

By default, the binary packages are created in `${PACKAGES}/All` and symlinks are created in `${PACKAGES}/category`, one for each category in the `CATEGORIES` variable. `PACKAGES` defaults to `pkgsrc/packages`.

## 13.16. Cleaning up

Once you're finished with a package, you can clean the work directory by running **make clean**. If you want to clean the work directories of all dependencies too, use **make clean-depends**.

## 13.17. Other helpful targets

### pre/post-\*

For any of the main targets described in the previous section (configure, build, install, etc.), two auxiliary targets exist with “pre-” and “post-” used as a prefix for the main target’s name. These targets are invoked before and after the main target is called, allowing extra configuration or installation steps be performed from a package’s Makefile, for example, which a program’s configure script or install target omitted.

About 5% of the pkgsrc packages define their custom post-extract target, another 5% define pre-configure, and 10% define post-install. The other pre/post-\* targets are defined even less often.

### do-\*

Should one of the main targets do the wrong thing, and should there be no variable to fix this, you can redefine it with the do-\* target. (Note that redefining the target itself instead of the do-\* target is a bad idea, as the pre-\* and post-\* targets won’t be called anymore, etc.)

About 15% of the pkgsrc packages override the default do-install, the other do-\* targets are overridden even less often.

### reinstall

If you did a **make install** and you noticed some file was not installed properly, you can repeat the installation with this target, which will ignore the “already installed” flag.

This is the default value of `DEPENDS_TARGET` except in the case of **make update** and **make package**, where the defaults are “package” and “update”, respectively.

### deinstall

This target does a `pkg_delete(1)` in the current directory, effectively de-installing the package. The following variables can be used to tune the behaviour:

#### PKG\_VERBOSE

Add a “-v” to the `pkg_delete(1)` command.

#### DEINSTALLDEPENDS

Remove all packages that require (depend on) the given package. This can be used to remove any packages that may have been pulled in by a given package, e.g. if **make deinstall** **DEINSTALLDEPENDS=1** is done in `pkgsrc/x11/kde`, this is likely to remove whole KDE. Works by adding “-R” to the `pkg_delete(1)` command line.

### bin-install

Install a binary package from local disk and via FTP from a list of sites (see the `BINPKG_SITES` variable), and do a **make package** if no binary package is available anywhere. The arguments given to **pkg\_add** can be set via `BIN_INSTALL_FLAGS` e.g., to do verbose operation, etc.

**install-clean**

This target removes the state files for the "install" and later phases so that the "install" target may be re-invoked. This can be used after editing the PLIST to install the package without rebuilding it.

**build-clean**

This target removes the state files for the "build" and later phases so that the "build" target may be re-invoked.

**update**

This target causes the current package to be updated to the latest version. The package and all depending packages first get de-installed, then current versions of the corresponding packages get compiled and installed. This is similar to manually noting which packages are currently installed, then performing a series of **make deinstall** and **make install** (or whatever `UPDATE_TARGET` is set to) for these packages.

You can use the "update" target to resume package updating in case a previous **make update** was interrupted for some reason. However, in this case, make sure you don't call **make clean** or otherwise remove the list of dependent packages in `WRKDIR`. Otherwise, you lose the ability to automatically update the current package along with the dependent packages you have installed.

Resuming an interrupted **make update** will only work as long as the package tree remains unchanged. If the source code for one of the packages to be updated has been changed, resuming **make update** will most certainly fail!

The following variables can be used either on the command line or in `mk.conf` to alter the behaviour of **make update**:

`UPDATE_TARGET`

Install target to recursively use for the updated package and the dependent packages. Defaults to `DEPENDS_TARGET` if set, "install" otherwise for **make update**. Other good targets are "package" or "bin-install". Do not set this to "update" or you will get stuck in an endless loop!

`NOCLEAN`

Don't clean up after updating. Useful if you want to leave the work sources of the updated packages around for inspection or other purposes. Be sure you eventually clean up the source tree (see the "clean-update" target below) or you may run into troubles with old source code still lying around on your next **make** or **make update**.

`REINSTALL`

Deinstall each package before installing (making `DEPENDS_TARGET`). This may be necessary if the "clean-update" target (see below) was called after interrupting a running **make update**.

`DEPENDS_TARGET`

Allows you to disable recursion and hardcode the target for packages. The default is "update" for the update target, facilitating a recursive update of prerequisite packages. Only set `DEPENDS_TARGET` if you want to disable recursive updates. Use `UPDATE_TARGET` instead to just set a specific target for each package to be installed during **make update** (see above).

## clean-update

Clean the source tree for all packages that would get updated if **make update** was called from the current directory. This target should not be used if the current package (or any of its depending packages) have already been de-installed (e.g., after calling **make update**) or you may lose some packages you intended to update. As a rule of thumb: only use this target *before* the first time you run **make update** and only if you have a dirty package tree (e.g., if you used `NOCLEAN`).

If you are unsure about whether your tree is clean, you can either perform a **make clean** at the top of the tree, or use the following sequence of commands from the directory of the package you want to update (*before* running **make update** for the first time, otherwise you lose all the packages you wanted to update!):

```
# make clean-update
# make clean CLEANDEPENDS=YES
# make update
```

The following variables can be used either on the command line or in `mk.conf` to alter the behaviour of **make clean-update**:

## CLEAR\_DIRLIST

After **make clean**, do not reconstruct the list of directories to update for this package. Only use this if **make update** successfully installed all packages you wanted to update. Normally, this is done automatically on **make update**, but may have been suppressed by the `NOCLEAN` variable (see above).

## replace

Update the installation of the current package. This differs from `update` in that it does not replace dependent packages. You will need to install `pkgtools/pkg_tarup` for this target to work.

*Be careful when using this target!* There are no guarantees that dependent packages will still work, in particular they will most certainly break if you **make replace** a library package whose shared library major version changed between your installed version and the new one. For this reason, this target is not officially supported and only recommended for advanced users.

## info

This target invokes `pkg_info(1)` for the current package. You can use this to check which version of a package is installed.

## index

This is a top-level command, i.e. it should be used in the `pkgsrc` directory. It creates a database of all packages in the local `pkgsrc` tree, including dependencies, comment, maintainer, and some other useful information. Individual entries are created by running **make describe** in the packages' directories. This index file is saved as `pkgsrc/INDEX`. It can be displayed in verbose format by running **make print-index**. You can search in it with **make search key=*something***. You can extract a list of all packages that depend on a particular one by running **make show-deps PKG=*somepackage***.

Running this command takes a very long time, some hours even on fast machines!

**readme**

This target generates a `index.html` file, which can be viewed using a browser such as `www/firefox` or `www/links`. The generated files contain references to any packages which are in the `PACKAGES` directory on the local host. The generated files can be made to refer to URLs based on `FTP_PKG_URL_HOST` and `FTP_PKG_URL_DIR`. For example, if I wanted to generate `index.html` files which pointed to binary packages on the local machine, in the directory `/usr/packages`, set `FTP_PKG_URL_HOST=file://localhost` and `FTP_PKG_URL_DIR=/usr/packages`. The `${PACKAGES}` directory and its subdirectories will be searched for all the binary packages.

The target can be run at the toplevel or in category directories, in which case it descends recursively.

**readme-all**

This is a top-level command, run it in `pkgsrc`. Use this target to create a file `README-all.html` which contains a list of all packages currently available in the NetBSD Packages Collection, together with the category they belong to and a short description. This file is compiled from the `pkgsrc/*/index.html` files, so be sure to run this *after* a **make readme**.

**cdrom-readme**

This is very much the same as the “readme” target (see above), but is to be used when generating a `pkgsrc` tree to be written to a CD-ROM. This target also produces `index.html` files, and can be made to refer to URLs based on `CDROM_PKG_URL_HOST` and `CDROM_PKG_URL_DIR`.

**show-distfiles**

This target shows which distfiles and patchfiles are needed to build the package (`ALLFILES`, which contains all `DISTFILES` and `PATCHFILES`, but not `patches/*`).

**show-downlevel**

This target shows nothing if the package is not installed. If a version of this package is installed, but is not the version provided in this version of `pkgsrc`, then a warning message is displayed. This target can be used to show which of your installed packages are downlevel, and so the old versions can be deleted, and the current ones added.

**show-pkgsrc-dir**

This target shows the directory in the `pkgsrc` hierarchy from which the package can be built and installed. This may not be the same directory as the one from which the package was installed. This target is intended to be used by people who may wish to upgrade many packages on a single host, and can be invoked from the top-level `pkgsrc` Makefile by using the “show-host-specific-pkgs” target.

**show-installed-depends**

This target shows which installed packages match the current package’s `DEPENDS`. Useful if out of date dependencies are causing build problems.

**print-build-depends-list**

This target shows the list of packages that the current package depends on for building.

**print-run-depends-list**

This target shows the list of packages that the current package depends on for running.

**check-shlibs**

After a package is installed, check all its binaries and (on ELF platforms) shared libraries to see if they find the shared libs they need. Run by default if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set in `mk.conf`.

**print-PLIST**

After a “make install” from a new or upgraded pkg, this prints out an attempt to generate a new `PLIST` from a **find -newer work/extract\_done**. An attempt is made to care for shared libs etc., but it is *strongly* recommended to review the result before putting it into `PLIST`. On upgrades, it’s useful to diff the output of this command against an already existing `PLIST` file.

If the package installs files via `tar(1)` or other methods that don’t update file access times, be sure to add these files manually to your `PLIST`, as the “find -newer” command used by this target won’t catch them!

See Section 19.3 for more information on this target.

**rebuild**

If you did a **make build** and you noticed some further modifications of sources are needed, you can repeat the build with this target, which will ignore the “already built” flag. This target is helpful while working with patches.

**repackage**

If you did a **make package** and you noticed some further modifications of sources are needed, you can repeat the package with this target, which will ignore the “already packaged” flag. This target is helpful while working with patches, `PLIST*` files etc.

**retest**

If you did a **make test** and you noticed some further modifications of sources are needed, you can repeat the test with this target, which will ignore the “already tested” flag. This target is helpful while working with patches.

## Chapter 14.

# Creating a new pkgsrc package from scratch

---

When you find a package that is not yet in pkgsrc, you most likely have a URL from where you can download the source code. Starting with this URL, creating a package involves only a few steps.

1. In your `mk.conf`, set `PKG_DEVELOPER=yes` to enable the basic quality checks.
2. Install the package `meta-pkgs/pkg_developer`, which among others will install the utilities **url2pkg**, **pkglint**, **pkgvi** and **mkpatches**:

```
$ cd /usr/pkgsrc
$ (cd meta-pkgs/pkg_developer && bmake update)
```
3. Choose one of the top-level directories as the category in which you want to place your package. You can also create a directory of your own (maybe called `local`). Change into that category directory:

```
$ cd category
```
4. Run the program **url2pkg**, passing as argument the URL of the distribution file (in most cases a `.tar.gz` file). This will download the distribution file and create the necessary files of the package, based on what's in the distribution file:

```
$ url2pkg https://www.example.org/packages/package-1.0.tar.gz
```
5. Examine the extracted files to determine the dependencies of your package. Ideally, this is mentioned in some `README` file, but things may differ. For each of these dependencies, look where it exists in pkgsrc, and if there is a file called `buildlink3.mk` in that directory, add a line to your package `Makefile` which includes that file just before the last line. If the `buildlink3.mk` file does not exist, it must be created first. The `buildlink3.mk` file makes sure that the package's include files and libraries are provided.

If you just need binaries from a dependent package, add a `DEPENDS` line to the `Makefile`, which specifies the version of the dependency and where it can be found in pkgsrc. This line should be placed in the third paragraph. If the dependency is only needed for building the package, but not when using it, use `TOOL_DEPENDS` or `BUILD_DEPENDS` instead of `DEPENDS`. The difference between `TOOL_DEPENDS` and `BUILD_DEPENDS` occurs when cross-compiling: `TOOL_DEPENDS` are *native* packages, i.e. packages for the platform where the package is built; `BUILD_DEPENDS` are *target* packages, i.e. packages for the platform for which the package is built. There is also `TEST_DEPENDS`, which specifies a dependency used only for testing the resulting package built, using the upstream project's included test suite, on the native platform. Your package may then look like this:

```
[...]
```

```
TOOL_DEPENDS+= libxslt-[0-9]*:../../textproc/libxslt
```

```
DEPENDS+=      screen-[0-9]*:../../misc/screen
DEPENDS+=      screen>=4.0:../../misc/screen
```

```
[...]
```

```
.include "../../category/package/buildlink3.mk"
.include "../../devel/glib2/buildlink3.mk"
.include "../../mk/bsd.pkg.mk"
```

6. Run **pkglint** to see what things still need to be done to make your package a “good” one. If you don’t know what pkglint’s warnings want to tell you, try **pkglint --explain** or **pkglint -e**, which outputs additional explanations.
7. In many cases the package is not yet ready to build. You can find instructions for the most common cases in the next section, Section 14.1. After you have followed the instructions over there, you can hopefully continue here.
8. Run **bmake clean** to clean the working directory from the extracted files. Besides these files, a lot of cache files and other system information have been saved in the working directory, which may have become outdated after you edited the `Makefile`.
9. Now, run **bmake** to build the package. For the various things that can go wrong in this phase, consult Chapter 21.

If the extracted files from the package need to be fixed, run multiple rounds of these commands:

```
$ bmake
$ pkgvi ${WRKSRC}/some/file/that/does/not/compile
$ mkpatches
$ bmake mps
$ bmake clean
```

10. When the package builds fine, the next step is to install the package. Run **bmake install** and hope that everything works.
11. Up to now, the file `PLIST`, which contains a list of the files that are installed by the package, is nearly empty. Run **bmake print-PLIST >PLIST** to generate a probably correct list. Check the file using your preferred text editor to see if the list of files looks plausible.
12. Run **pkglint** again to see if the generated `PLIST` contains garbage or not.
13. When you ran **bmake install**, the package had been registered in the database of installed files, but with an empty list of files. To fix this, run **bmake deinstall** and **bmake install** again. Now the package is registered with the list of files from `PLIST`.
14. Run **bmake clean update** to run everything from above again in a single step, making sure that the `PLIST` is correct and the whole package is created as intended.
15. Run **pkglint** to see if there’s anything left to do.
16. Commit the package to `pkgsrc-wip` or main `pkgsrc`; see Chapter 23.

## 14.1. Common types of packages

### 14.1.1. Python modules and programs

Python modules and programs packages are easily created using a set of predefined variables.

If some Python versions are not supported by the software, set the `PYTHON_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE` variable to the Python versions that are not supported, e.g.

```
PYTHON_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE=    27
```

If the packaged software is a Python module, include `../../../../lang/python/wheel.mk`. Note per PEP-518, the minimum and default requirement to create `.whl` files is `devel/py-setuptools`; however, there are various other possible tools that projects can use. Thus inclusion of `wheel.mk` does not imply these defaults are defined as `TOOL_DEPENDS`. Whatever the project specifically requires as packaging tools must be defined in the package Makefile.

The package directory should be called “py-software” and `PKGNAME` should be set to “`{PYPKGPREFIX}-${DISTNAME}`”, e.g.

```
DISTNAME=    foopymodule-1.2.10
PKGNAME=    ${PYPKGPREFIX}-${DISTNAME}
```

For software in PyPi, the name should match what PyPi specifies for “pip install software”.

If it is an application, include “`../../../../lang/python/application.mk`”. In order to correctly set the path to the Python interpreter, use the `REPLACE_PYTHON` variable and set it to the list of files (paths relative to `WRKSRCDIR`) that must be corrected. For example:

```
REPLACE_PYTHON=    *.py
```

### 14.1.2. R packages

Simple R packages from CRAN

([https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available\\_packages\\_by\\_name.html](https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available_packages_by_name.html)) are handled automatically by **R2pkg**, which is available in `pkgtools/R2pkg`. Individual packages (and optionally their dependencies) may be created and updated. R packages generally follow the same form, and most of the relevant information needed is contained in a `DESCRIPTION` file as part of each R package on CRAN ([https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available\\_packages\\_by\\_name.html](https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available_packages_by_name.html)). Consequently, **R2pkg** downloads that information and creates or updates a package in the canonical form. The resulting package should be reviewed for correctness.

### 14.1.3. TeXlive packages

TeXlive packages from CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>) are handled automatically by **texlive2pkg**, which is available in `pkgtools/texlive2pkg`.

If the TeXlive package name is not known, it may be useful to search CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>). A “Contained in” field on the package page typically identifies the basename of the package file in the TeXlive archive (<https://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/systems/texlive/tlnet/archive>).

If the TeXlive package name is known, download the files from the TeXlive archive (<https://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/systems/texlive/tlnet/archive>). For package `foo`, you will need to download `foo.tar.xz`. Most TeXlive packages also have associated documentation packages, so download `foo.doc.tar.xz` at the same time. These files should be placed in the appropriate category directory, which is often but not always `print`. Then run the following command in the category directory.

```
texlive2pkg foo.tar.xz foo.doc.tar.xz
```

This will create two packages, `tex-foo` and `tex-foo-doc`. Be sure to check that both packages are correct.

Finally, CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>) currently does not include version information in package filenames and changes their contents periodically when updates occur. Consequently, `pkgsrc` avoids downloading distfiles directly from CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>) and instead relies on the `pkgsrc` archives. For each new or updated TeXlive package, e.g., the main one and the corresponding documentation, upload the distfiles with the following command in each package directory.

```
make upload-distfiles
```

## 14.2. Examples

### 14.2.1. How the `www/nvu` package came into `pkgsrc`

#### 14.2.1.1. The initial package

Looking at the file `pkgsrc/doc/TODO`, I saw that the “`nvu`” package has not yet been imported into `pkgsrc`. As the description says it has to do with the web, the obvious choice for the category is “`www`”.

```
$ mkdir www/nvu
$ cd www/nvu
```

The web site says that the sources are available as a tar file, so I fed that URL to the `url2pkg` program:

```
$ url2pkg http://cvs.nvu.com/download/nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
```

My editor popped up, and I added a `PKGNAME` line below the `DISTNAME` line, as the package name should not have the word “sources” in it. I also filled in the `MAINTAINER`, `HOMEPAGE` and `COMMENT` fields. Then the package `Makefile` looked like that:

```
# $NetBSD $
#

DISTNAME=      nvu-1.0-sources
PKGNAME=      nvu-1.0
```

```
CATEGORIES=      www
MASTER_SITES=   http://cvs.nvu.com/download/
EXTRACT_SUFX=   .tar.bz2

MAINTAINER=     rillig@NetBSD.org
HOMEPAGE=       http://cvs.nvu.com/
COMMENT=        Web Authoring System

# url2pkg-marker (please do not remove this line.)
.include "../mk/bsd.pkg.mk"
```

On the first line of output above, an artificial space has been added between NetBSD and \$, this is a workaround to prevent CVS expanding to the filename of the guide.

Then, I quit the editor and watched pkgsrc downloading a large source archive:

```
url2pkg> Running "make makesum" ...
=> Required installed package digest>=20010302: digest-20060826 found
=> Fetching nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
Requesting http://cvs.nvu.com/download/nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
100% |*****| 28992 KB 150.77 KB/s00:00 ETA
29687976 bytes retrieved in 03:12 (150.77 KB/s)
url2pkg> Running "make extract" ...
=> Required installed package digest>=20010302: digest-20060826 found
=> Checksum SHA1 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
=> Checksum RMD160 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
work.bacc -> /tmp/roland/pkgsrc/www/nvu/work.bacc
===> Installing dependencies for nvu-1.0
===> Overriding tools for nvu-1.0
===> Extracting for nvu-1.0
url2pkg> Adjusting the Makefile.
```

Remember to correct CATEGORIES, HOMEPAGE, COMMENT, and DESCR when you're done!

Good luck! (See pkgsrc/doc/pkgsrc.txt for some more help :-)

#### 14.2.1.2. Fixing all kinds of problems to make the package work

Now that the package has been extracted, let's see what's inside it. The package has a README.txt, but that only says something about mozilla, so it's probably useless for seeing what dependencies this package has. But since there is a GNU configure script in the package, let's hope that it will complain about everything it needs.

```
$ bmake
=> Required installed package digest>=20010302: digest-20060826 found
=> Checksum SHA1 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
=> Checksum RMD160 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
===> Patching for nvu-1.0
===> Creating toolchain wrappers for nvu-1.0
===> Configuring for nvu-1.0
[...]
configure: error: Perl 5.004 or higher is required.
```

```
[...]
WARNING: Please add USE_TOOLS+=perl to the package Makefile.
[...]
```

That worked quite well. So I opened the package Makefile in my editor, and since it already has a `USE_TOOLS` line, I just appended “perl” to it. Since the dependencies of the package have changed now, and since a perl wrapper is automatically installed in the “tools” phase, I need to build the package from scratch.

```
$ bmake clean
==> Cleaning for nvu-1.0
$ bmake
[...]
*** /tmp/roland/pkgsrc/www/nvu/work.bacc/.tools/bin/make is not \
GNU Make.  You will not be able to build Mozilla without GNU Make.
[...]
```

So I added “gmake” to the `USE_TOOLS` line and tried again (from scratch).

```
[...]
checking for GTK - version >= 1.2.0... no
*** Could not run GTK test program, checking why...
[...]
```

Now to the other dependencies. The first question is: Where is the GTK package hidden in pkgsrc?

```
$ echo ../../*/gtk*
[many packages ...]
$ echo ../../*/gtk
../../x11/gtk
$ echo ../../*/gtk2
../../x11/gtk2
$ echo ../../*/gtk2/bui*
../../x11/gtk2/buildlink3.mk
```

The first try was definitely too broad. The second one had exactly one result, which is very good. But there is one pitfall with GNOME packages. Before GNOME 2 had been released, there were already many GNOME 1 packages in pkgsrc. To be able to continue to use these packages, the GNOME 2 packages were imported as separate packages, and their names usually have a “2” appended. So I checked whether this was the case here, and indeed it was.

Since the GTK2 package has a `buildlink3.mk` file, adding the dependency is very easy. I just inserted an `.include` line before the last line of the package Makefile, so that it now looks like this:

```
[...]
.include "../../x11/gtk2/buildlink3.mk"
.include "../../mk/bsd.pkg.mk
```

After another **bmake clean && bmake**, the answer was:

```
[...]
checking for gtk-config... /home/roland/pkg/bin/gtk-config
checking for GTK - version >= 1.2.0... no
```

```

*** Could not run GTK test program, checking why...
*** The test program failed to compile or link. See the file config.log for the
*** exact error that occurred. This usually means GTK was incorrectly installed
*** or that you have moved GTK since it was installed. In the latter case, you
*** may want to edit the gtk-config script: /home/roland/pkg/bin/gtk-config
configure: error: Test for GTK failed.
[...]

```

In this particular case, the assumption that “every package prefers GNOME 2” had been wrong. The first of the lines above told me that this package really wanted to have the GNOME 1 version of GTK. If the package had looked for GTK2, it would have looked for **pkg-config** instead of **gtk-config**. So I changed the `x11/gtk2` to `x11/gtk` in the package Makefile, and tried again.

```

[...]
cc -o xpidl.o -c -DOSTYPE=\"NetBSD3\" -DOSARCH=\"NetBSD\" [...]
In file included from xpidl.c:42:
xpidl.h:53:24: libIDL/IDL.h: No such file or directory
In file included from xpidl.c:42:
xpidl.h:132: error: parse error before "IDL_ns"
[...]

```

The package still does not find all of its dependencies. Now the question is: Which package provides the `libIDL/IDL.h` header file?

```

$ echo ../../*/*idl*
../../devel/py-idle ../../wip/idled ../../x11/acidlaunch
$ echo ../../*/*IDL*
../../net/libIDL

```

Let’s take the one from the second try. So I included the `../../net/libIDL/buildlink3.mk` file and tried again. But the error didn’t change. After digging through some of the code, I concluded that the build process of the package was broken and couldn’t have ever worked, but since the Mozilla source tree is quite large, I didn’t want to fix it. So I added the following to the package Makefile and tried again:

```

CPPFLAGS+=          -I${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.libIDL}/include/libIDL-2.0
BUILDLINK_TRANSFORM+= 1:IDL:IDL-2

```

The latter line is needed because the package expects the library `libIDL.so`, but only `libIDL-2.so` is available. So I told the compiler wrapper to rewrite that on the fly.

The next problem was related to a recent change of the FreeType interface. I looked up in `www/seamonkey` which patch files were relevant for this issue and copied them to the `patches` directory. Then I retried, fixed the patches so that they applied cleanly and retried again. This time, everything worked.

### 14.2.1.3. Installing the package

```

$ bmake CHECK_FILES=no install
[...]
$ bmake print-PLIST >PLIST
$ bmake deinstall
$ bmake install

```

## Chapter 15.

# Programming in Makefiles

---

Pkgsrc consists of many `Makefile` fragments, each of which forms a well-defined part of the pkgsrc system. Using the `make(1)` system as a programming language for a big system like pkgsrc requires some discipline to keep the code correct and understandable.

The basic ingredients for `Makefile` programming are variables and shell commands. Among these shell commands may even be more complex ones like `awk(1)` programs. To make sure that every shell command runs as intended it is necessary to quote all variables correctly when they are used.

This chapter describes some patterns that appear quite often in `Makefiles`, including the pitfalls that come along with them.

### 15.1. Caveats

- When you are creating a file as a target of a rule, always write the data to a temporary file first and finally rename that file. Otherwise there might occur an error in the middle of generating the file, and when the user runs `make(1)` for the second time, the file exists and will not be regenerated properly.

Example:

wrong:

```
@echo "line 1" > ${.TARGET}
@echo "line 2" >> ${.TARGET}
@false
```

correct:

```
@echo "line 1" > ${.TARGET}.tmp
@echo "line 2" >> ${.TARGET}.tmp
@false
@mv ${.TARGET}.tmp ${.TARGET}
```

When you run **make wrong** twice, the file `wrong` will exist, although there was an error message in the first run. On the other hand, running **make correct** gives an error message twice, as expected.

You might remember that `make(1)` sometimes removes `${.TARGET}` in case of error, but this only happens when it is interrupted, for example by pressing `Ctrl+C`. This does *not* happen when one of the commands fails (like `false(1)` above).

### 15.2. Makefile variables

`Makefile` variables contain strings that can be processed using the five operators `=`, `+=`, `?=`, `:=` and `!=`, which are described in the `make(1)` man page.

When a variable's value is parsed from a `Makefile`, the hash character `#` and the backslash character `\` are handled specially. If a backslash is the last character in a line, that backslash is removed from the line and the line continues with the next line of the file.

The `#` character starts a comment that reaches until the end of the line. To get an actual `#` character, such as in a URL, write `\#` instead.

The evaluation of variables either happens immediately or lazy. It happens immediately when the variable occurs on the right-hand side of the `:=` or the `!=` operator, in a `.if` condition or a `.for` loop. In the other cases, it is evaluated lazily.

Some of the modifiers split the string into words and then operate on the words, others operate on the string as a whole. When a string is split into words, double quotes and single quotes are interpreted as delimiters, just like in `sh(1)`.

### 15.2.1. Naming conventions

- All variable names starting with an underscore are reserved for use by the `pkgsrc` infrastructure. They shall not be used by packages.
- In `.for` loops you should use lowercase variable names for the iteration variables.
- All list variables should have a plural name, such as `PKG_OPTIONS` or `DISTFILES`.

## 15.3. Code snippets

### 15.3.1. Adding things to a list

When adding a string that possibly contains whitespace or quotes to a list (example 1), it must be quoted using the `:Q` modifier.

When adding another list to a list (example 2), it must not be quoted, since its elements are already quoted.

```
STRING=          foo * bar `date`
LIST=            # empty
ANOTHER_LIST=   a=b c=d

LIST+=          ${STRING:Q}      # 1
LIST+=          ${ANOTHER_LIST} # 2
```

### 15.3.2. Echoing a string exactly as-is

Echoing a string containing special characters needs special work.

```
STRING=          foo bar < > * `date` $$HOME ' "
EXAMPLE_ENV=     string=${STRING:Q} x=multiple\ quoted\ words

all:
```

```

echo ${STRING}                # 1
echo ${STRING:Q}              # 2
printf '%s\n' ${STRING:Q}    # 3
env ${EXAMPLE_ENV} sh -c 'echo "$$string"; echo "$$x"' # 4

```

Example 1 leads to a syntax error in the shell, as the characters are just copied.

Example 2 quotes the string so that the shell interprets it correctly. But the echo command may additionally interpret strings with a leading dash or those containing backslashes.

Example 3 can handle arbitrary strings, since printf(1) only interprets the format string, but not the next argument. The trailing single quotes handle the case when the string is empty. In that case, the :Q modifier would result in an empty string too, which would then be skipped by the shell. For printf(1) this doesn't make a difference, but other programs may care.

In example 4, the EXAMPLE\_ENV does not need to be quoted because the quoting has already been done when adding elements to the list.

### 15.3.3. Passing CFLAGS to GNU configure scripts

When passing CFLAGS or similar variables to a GNU-style configure script (especially those that call other configure scripts), it must not have leading or trailing whitespace, since otherwise the configure script gets confused. To trim leading and trailing whitespace, use the :M modifier, as in the following example:

```

CPPFLAGS=                    # empty
CPPFLAGS+=                  -Wundef -DPREFIX=\"${PREFIX}\"
CPPFLAGS+=                  ${MY_CPPFLAGS}

CONFIGURE_ARGS+=           CPPFLAGS=${CPPFLAGS:M*:Q}

all:
    echo x${CPPFLAGS:Q}x      # leading and trailing whitespace
    echo x${CONFIGURE_ARGS:Q}x # properly trimmed

```

In this example, CPPFLAGS has both leading and trailing whitespace because the += operator always adds a space.

### 15.3.4. Handling possibly empty variables

When a possibly empty variable is used in a shell program, it may lead to a syntax error.

```

EGFILES=                    # empty

install-examples:          # produces a syntax error in the shell
    for egfile in ${EGFILES}; do
        echo "Installing $$egfile";
    done

```

The shell only sees the text for egfile in ; do, since \${EGFILES} is replaced with an empty string by make(1). To fix this syntax error, use one of the snippets below.

```
EGFILES=          # empty

install-examples:
    for egfile in ${EGFILES} ""; do          \
        [ -n "$$egfile" ] || continue;      \
        echo "Installing $$egfile";         \
    done
```

In this case, an empty string is appended to the iteration list (to prevent the syntax error) and filtered out later.

```
EGFILES=          # empty

install-examples:
    .for egfile in ${EGFILES}
        echo "Installing ${egfile}"
    .endfor
```

If one of the filenames contains special characters, it should be enclosed in single or double quotes.

To have a shell command test whether a make variable is empty, use the following code: `${TEST} -z ${POSSIBLY_EMPTY:Q}""`.

### 15.3.5. Testing yes/no variables in conditions

When a variable can have the values `yes` or `no`, use the following pattern to test the variable:

```
.if ${VAR:U:tl} == "yes"
# do something
.endif
```

The `:U` modifier is only necessary if the variable can be undefined. If the variable is guaranteed to be defined, the `:U` can be omitted.

The `:tl` modifier converts the variable value to lowercase, allowing for the values `yes`, `Yes`, `YES`.

# Chapter 16.

## *Options handling*

---

Many packages have the ability to be built to support different sets of features. `bsd.options.mk` is a framework in `pkgsrc` that provides generic handling of those options that determine different ways in which the packages can be built. It's possible for the user to specify exactly which sets of options will be built into a package or to allow a set of global default options apply.

There are two broad classes of behaviors that one might want to control via options. One is whether some particular feature is enabled in a program that will be built anyway, often by including or not including a dependency on some other package. The other is whether or not an additional program will be built as part of the package. Generally, it is better to make a split package for such additional programs instead of using options, because it enables binary packages to be built which can then be added separately. For example, the `foo` package might have minimal dependencies (those packages without which `foo` doesn't make sense), and then the `foo-gfoo` package might include the GTK frontend program `gfoo`. This is better than including a `gtk` option to `foo` that adds `gfoo`, because either that option is default, in which case binary users can't get `foo` without `gfoo`, or not default, in which case they can't get `gfoo`. With split packages, they can install `foo` without having GTK, and later decide to install `gfoo` (pulling in GTK at that time). This is an advantage to source users too, avoiding the need for rebuilds.

Plugins with widely varying dependencies should usually be split instead of options.

It is often more work to maintain split packages, especially if the upstream package does not support this. The decision of split vs. option should be made based on the likelihood that users will want or object to the various pieces, the size of the dependencies that are included, and the amount of work.

A further consideration is licensing. Non-free parts, or parts that depend on non-free dependencies (especially plugins) should almost always be split if feasible.

### 16.1. Global default options

Global default options are listed in `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS`, which is a list of the options that should be built into every package if that option is supported. This variable should be set in `mk.conf`.

### 16.2. Converting packages to use `bsd.options.mk`

The following example shows how `bsd.options.mk` should be used by the hypothetical "wibble" package, either in the package Makefile, or in a file, e.g. `options.mk`, that is included by the main package Makefile.

```
PKG_OPTIONS_VAR=                PKG_OPTIONS.wibble
PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS=          wibble-foo ldap
PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS=    database
PKG_OPTIONS_GROUP.database=    mysql pgsql
```

```

PKG_SUGGESTED_OPTIONS=          wibble-foo
PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS+=       WIBBLE_USE_OPENLDAP:ldap
PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS+=       foo:wibble-foo

.include "../..mk/bsd.prefs.mk"

# this package was previously named wibble2
.if defined(PKG_OPTIONS.wibble2)
PKG_LEGACY_OPTIONS+=            ${PKG_OPTIONS.wibble2}
PKG_OPTIONS_DEPRECATED_WARNINGS+= \
    "Deprecated variable PKG_OPTIONS.wibble2 used, use ${PKG_OPTIONS_VAR} instead."
.endif

.include "../..mk/bsd.options.mk"

# Package-specific option-handling

###
### FOO support
###
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mwibble-foo)
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=               --enable-foo
.endif

###
### LDAP support
###
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mldap)
. include "../..databases/openldap-client/buildlink3.mk"
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=               --enable-ldap=${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.openldap-client}
.endif

###
### database support
###
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mmysql)
. include "../..mk/mysql.buildlink3.mk"
.endif
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mpgsql)
. include "../..mk/pgsql.buildlink3.mk"
.endif

```

The first section contains the information about which build options are supported by the package, and any default options settings if needed.

1. `PKG_OPTIONS_VAR` is the name of the `make(1)` variable that the user can set to override the default options. It should be set to `PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`. Do not set it to `PKG_OPTIONS.${PKGBASE}`, since `PKGBASE` is not defined at the point where the options are processed.
2. `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS` is a list of build options supported by the package.

3. `PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS` is a list of names of groups of mutually exclusive options. The options in each group are listed in `PKG_OPTIONS_GROUP.groupname`. The most specific setting of any option from the group takes precedence over all other options in the group. Options from the groups will be automatically added to `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS`.
4. `PKG_OPTIONS_REQUIRED_GROUPS` is like `PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS`, but building the packages will fail if no option from the group is selected.
5. `PKG_OPTIONS_NONEMPTY_SETS` is a list of names of sets of options. At least one option from each set must be selected. The options in each set are listed in `PKG_OPTIONS_SET.setname`. Options from the sets will be automatically added to `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS`. Building the package will fail if no option from the set is selected.
6. `PKG_SUGGESTED_OPTIONS` is a list of build options which are enabled by default.
7. `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS` is a list of “`USE_VARIABLE:option`” pairs that map legacy `mk.conf` variables to their option counterparts. Pairs should be added with “`+ =`” to keep the listing of global legacy variables. A warning will be issued if the user uses a legacy variable.
8. `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS` is a list of “`old-option:new-option`” pairs that map options that have been renamed to their new counterparts. Pairs should be added with “`+ =`” to keep the listing of global legacy options. A warning will be issued if the user uses a legacy option.
9. `PKG_LEGACY_OPTIONS` is a list of options implied by deprecated variables used. This can be used for cases that neither `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS` nor `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS` can handle, e. g. when `PKG_OPTIONS_VAR` is renamed.
10. `PKG_OPTIONS_DEPRECATED_WARNINGS` is a list of warnings about deprecated variables or options used, and what to use instead.

A package should never modify `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS` or the variable named in `PKG_OPTIONS_VAR`. These are strictly user-settable. To suggest a default set of options, use `PKG_SUGGESTED_OPTIONS`.

`PKG_OPTIONS_VAR` must be defined before including `bsd.options.mk`. If none of `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS`, `PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS`, and `PKG_OPTIONS_REQUIRED_GROUPS` are defined (as can happen with platform-specific options if none of them is supported on the current platform), `PKG_OPTIONS` is set to the empty list and the package is otherwise treated as not using the options framework.

After the inclusion of `bsd.options.mk`, the variable `PKG_OPTIONS` contains the list of selected build options, properly filtered to remove unsupported and duplicate options.

The remaining sections contain the logic that is specific to each option. The correct way to check for an option is to check whether it is listed in `PKG_OPTIONS`:

```
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Moption)
```

## 16.3. Option Names

Options that enable similar features in different packages (like optional support for a library) should use a common name in all packages that support it (like the name of the library). If another package already has an option with the same meaning, use the same name.

Options that enable features specific to one package, where it's unlikely that another (unrelated) package has the same (or a similar) optional feature, should use a name prefixed with `pkgname-`.

If a group of related packages share an optional feature specific to that group, prefix it with the name of the “main” package (e. g. `djvware-errno-hack`).

For new options, add a line to `mk/defaults/options.description`. Lines have two fields, separated by tab. The first field is the option name, the second its description. The description should be a whole sentence (starting with an uppercase letter and ending with a period) that describes what enabling the option does. E. g. “Enable ispell support.” The file is sorted by option names.

## 16.4. Determining the options of dependencies

When writing `buildlink3.mk` files, it is often necessary to list different dependencies based on the options with which the package was built. For querying these options, the file `pkgsrc/mk/pkg-build-options.mk` should be used. A typical example looks like this:

```
pkgbase := libpurple
.include "../../mk/pkg-build-options.mk"

.if !empty(PKG_BUILD_OPTIONS.libpurple:Mdbus)
...
.endif
```

Including `pkg-build-options.mk` here will set the variable `PKG_BUILD_OPTIONS.libpurple` to the build options of the `libpurple` package, which can then be queried like `PKG_OPTIONS` in the `options.mk` file. See the file `pkg-build-options.mk` for more details.

## Chapter 17.

# *Tools needed for building or running*

---

The `USE_TOOLS` definition is used both internally by `pkgsrc` and also for individual packages to define what commands are needed for building a package (like `TOOL_DEPENDS`) or for later run-time of an installed packaged (such as `DEPENDS`). If the native system provides an adequate tool, then in many cases, a `pkgsrc` package will not be used.

When building a package, the replacement tools are made available in a directory (as symlinks or wrapper scripts) that is early in the executable search path. Just like the `buildlink` system, this helps with consistent builds.

A tool may be needed to help build a specific package. For example, `perl`, GNU make (`gmake`) or `yacc` may be needed.

Also a tool may be needed, for example, because the native system's supplied tool may be inefficient for building a package with `pkgsrc`. For example, a package may need GNU `awk`, `bison` (instead of `yacc`) or a better `sed`.

The tools used by a package can be listed by running **`make show-tools`**.

### 17.1. Tools for `pkgsrc` builds

The default set of tools used by `pkgsrc` is defined in `bsd.pkg.mk`. This includes standard Unix tools, such as: **`cat`**, **`awk`**, **`chmod`**, **`test`**, and so on. These can be seen by running: **`make show-var VARNAME=USE_TOOLS`**.

If a package needs a specific program to build then the `USE_TOOLS` variable can be used to define the tools needed.

### 17.2. Tools needed by packages

In the following examples, the `:run` means that it is needed at run-time (and becomes a `DEPENDS`). The default is a build dependency which can be set with `:build`. (So in this example, it is the same as `gmake:build` and `pkg-config:build`.)

```
USE_TOOLS+=      gmake perl:run pkg-config
```

When using the tools framework, a `TOOLS_PATH.foo` variable is defined which contains the full path to the appropriate tool. For example, `TOOLS_PATH.bash` could be `"/bin/bash"` on Linux systems.

If you always need a `pkgsrc` version of the tool at run-time, then just use `DEPENDS` instead.

## 17.3. Tools provided by platforms

When improving or porting pkgsrc to a new platform, have a look at (or create) the corresponding platform specific make file fragment under `pkgsrc/mk/tools/tools.${OPSYS}.mk` which defines the name of the common tools. For example:

```
.if exists(/usr/bin/bzcat)
TOOLS_PLATFORM.bzcat?=          /usr/bin/bzcat
.elif exists(/usr/bin/bzip2)
TOOLS_PLATFORM.bzcat?=          /usr/bin/bzip2 -cd
.endif

TOOLS_PLATFORM.true?=           true                # shell builtin
```

## Chapter 18.

# *Buildlink methodology*

---

Buildlink is a framework in pkgsrc that controls what headers and libraries are seen by a package's configure and build processes. This is implemented in a two step process:

1. Symlink headers and libraries for dependencies into `BUILDLINK_DIR`, which by default is a subdirectory of `WRKDIR`.
2. Create wrapper scripts that are used in place of the normal compiler tools that translate `-I${LOCALBASE}/include` and `-L${LOCALBASE}/lib` into references to `BUILDLINK_DIR`. The wrapper scripts also make native compiler on some operating systems look like GCC, so that packages that expect GCC won't require modifications to build with those native compilers.

This normalizes the environment in which a package is built so that the package may be built consistently despite what other software may be installed. Please note that the normal system header and library paths, e.g. `/usr/include`, `/usr/lib`, etc., are always searched -- buildlink3 is designed to insulate the package build from non-system-supplied software.

### 18.1. Converting packages to use buildlink3

The process of converting packages to use the buildlink3 framework ("bl3ifying") is fairly straightforward. The things to keep in mind are:

1. Ensure that the build always calls the wrapper scripts instead of the actual toolchain. Some packages are tricky, and the only way to know for sure is the check `${WRKDIR}/.work.log` to see if the wrappers are being invoked.
2. Don't override `PREFIX` from within the package Makefile, e.g. Java VMs, standalone shells, etc., because the code to symlink files into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}` looks for files relative to "`pkg_info -qp pkgname`".
3. Remember that *only* the `buildlink3.mk` files that you list in a package's Makefile are added as dependencies for that package.

If a dependency on a particular package is required for its libraries and headers, then we replace:

```
DEPENDS+=          foo>=1.1.0:../../category/foo
```

with

```
.include "../../category/foo/buildlink3.mk"
```

The `buildlink3.mk` files usually define the required dependencies. If you need a newer version of the dependency when using `buildlink3.mk` files, then you can define it in your Makefile; for example:

```
BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.foo+=    foo>=1.1.0
.include "../../category/foo/buildlink3.mk"
```

There are several `buildlink3.mk` files in `pkgsrc/mk` that handle special package issues:

- `bdb.buildlink3.mk` chooses either the native or a `pkgsrc` Berkeley DB implementation based on the values of `BDB_ACCEPTED` and `BDB_DEFAULT`.
- `curses.buildlink3.mk`: If the system comes with neither Curses nor NCurses, this will take care to install the `devel/ncurses` package.
- `krb5.buildlink3.mk` uses the value of `KRB5_ACCEPTED` to choose between adding a dependency on Heimdal or MIT-krb5 for packages that require a Kerberos 5 implementation.
- `motif.buildlink3.mk` checks for a system-provided Motif installation or adds a dependency on `x11/lesstif` or `x11/motif`. The user can set `MOTIF_TYPE` to “dt”, “lesstif” or “motif” to choose which Motif version will be used.
- `readline.buildlink3.mk` checks for a system-provided GNU readline or editline (libedit) installation, or adds a dependency on `devel/readline`, `devel/editline`. The user can set `READLINE_DEFAULT` to choose readline implementation. If your package really needs GNU readline library, its Makefile should include `devel/readline/buildlink3.mk` instead of `readline.buildlink3.mk`.
- `oss.buildlink3.mk` defines several variables that may be used by packages that use the Open Sound System (OSS) API.
- `pgsql.buildlink3.mk` will accept any of the Postgres versions in the variable `PGSQL_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED` and default to the version `PGSQL_VERSION_DEFAULT`. See the file for more information.
- `pthread.buildlink3.mk` uses the value of `PTHREAD_OPTS` and checks for native pthreads or adds a dependency on `devel/pth` as needed.
- `xaw.buildlink3.mk` uses the value of `XAW_TYPE` to choose a particular Athena widgets library.

The comments in those `buildlink3.mk` files provide a more complete description of how to use them properly.

## 18.2. Writing `buildlink3.mk` files

A package’s `buildlink3.mk` file is included by Makefiles to indicate the need to compile and link against header files and libraries provided by the package. A `buildlink3.mk` file should always provide enough information to add the correct type of dependency relationship and include any other `buildlink3.mk` files that it needs to find headers and libraries that it needs in turn.

To generate an initial `buildlink3.mk` file for further editing, Rene Hexel’s `pkgtools/createbuildlink` package is highly recommended. For most packages, the following command will generate a good starting point for `buildlink3.mk` files:

```
% cd pkgsrc/category/pkgdir
% createbuildlink >buildlink3.mk
```

### 18.2.1. Anatomy of a buildlink3.mk file

The following real-life example `buildlink3.mk` is taken from `pkgsrc/graphics/tiff`:

```
BUILDLINK_TREE+=          tiff

.if !defined(TIFF_BUILDLINK3_MK)
TIFF_BUILDLINK3_MK:=

BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.tiff+=    tiff>=3.6.1
BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.tiff+=    tiff>=3.7.2nb1
BUILDLINK_PKGSRCDIR.tiff?=      ../../graphics/tiff

.include "../../devel/zlib/buildlink3.mk"
.include "../../graphics/jpeg/buildlink3.mk"
.endif # TIFF_BUILDLINK3_MK

BUILDLINK_TREE+=          -tiff
```

The header and footer manipulate `BUILDLINK_TREE`, which is common across all `buildlink3.mk` files and is used to track the dependency tree.

The main section is protected from multiple inclusion and controls how the dependency on `pkg` is added. Several important variables are set in the section:

- `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` is the dependency version recorded in the installed package; this should always be set using `+=` to ensure that we’re appending to any pre-existing list of values. This variable should be set to the last version of the package that had an backwards-incompatible API change.
- `BUILDLINK_PKGSRCDIR.pkg` is the location of the `pkg` `pkgsrc` directory.
- `BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD.pkg` (not shown above) controls whether we use `BUILD_DEPENDS` or `DEPENDS` to add the dependency on `pkg`. The build dependency is selected by setting `BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD.pkg` to “build”. By default, the full dependency is used.
- `BUILDLINK_INCDIRS.pkg` and `BUILDLINK_LIBDIRS.pkg` (not shown above) are lists of subdirectories of `${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}` to add to the header and library search paths. These default to “include” and “lib” respectively.
- `BUILDLINK_CPPFLAGS.pkg` (not shown above) is the list of preprocessor flags to add to `CPPFLAGS`, which are passed on to the configure and build phases. The “-I” option should be avoided and instead be handled using `BUILDLINK_INCDIRS.pkg` as above.

The following variables are all optionally defined within this second section (protected against multiple inclusion) and control which package files are symlinked into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}` and how their names are transformed during the symlinking:

- `BUILDLINK_FILES.pkg` (not shown above) is a shell glob pattern relative to `${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}` to be symlinked into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}`, e.g. `include/*.h`.
- `BUILDLINK_FILES_CMD.pkg` (not shown above) is a shell pipeline that outputs to `stdout` a list of files relative to `${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}`. The resulting files are to be symlinked into

`#{BUILDLINK_DIR}`. By default, this takes the `+CONTENTS` of a `pkg` and filters it through `#{BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER.pkg}`.

- `BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER.pkg` (not shown above) is a filter command that filters `+CONTENTS` input into a list of files relative to `#{BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}` on stdout. By default, `BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER.pkg` outputs the contents of the `include` and `lib` directories in the package `+CONTENTS`.
- `BUILDLINK_FNAME_TRANSFORM.pkg` (not shown above) is a list of sed arguments used to transform the name of the source filename into a destination filename, e.g. `-e "s/curses.h/ncurses.hlg"`.

This section can additionally include any `buildlink3.mk` needed for `pkg`'s library dependencies. Including these `buildlink3.mk` files means that the headers and libraries for these dependencies are also symlinked into `#{BUILDLINK_DIR}` whenever the `pkg` `buildlink3.mk` file is included. Dependencies are only added for directly include `buildlink3.mk` files.

When providing a `buildlink3.mk` and including other `buildlink3.mk` files in it, please only add necessary ones, i.e., those whose libraries or header files are automatically exposed when the package is use.

In particular, if only an executable (`bin/foo`) is linked against a library, that library does not need to be propagated in the `buildlink3.mk` file.

The following steps should help you decide if a `buildlink3.mk` file needs to be included:

- Look at the installed header files: What headers do they include? The packages providing these files must be buildlinked.
- Run `ldd` on all installed libraries and look against what other libraries they link. Some of the packages providing these probably need to be buildlinked; however, it's not automatic, since e.g. GTK on some systems pulls in the X libraries, so they will show up in the `ldd` output, while on others (like OS X) it won't. `ldd` output can thus only be used as a hint.

### 18.2.2. Updating `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` and `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` in `buildlink3.mk` files

Both variables set lower bounds for a version of this package. The two variables differ in that one describes source compatibility (API) and the other binary compatibility (ABI). The difference is that a change in the API breaks compilation of programs while changes in the ABI stop compiled programs from running.

The `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` variable in a `buildlink3.mk` should be changed very rarely. (One possible scenario: If all packages using this package need a higher version than defined in the `buildlink3.mk`, `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` could be updated to that higher version.)

On the other hand, changes to `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` are more common. The variable will need to be updated every time the major version of one of its shared libraries is changed, or any other change where a binary built against the previous version of the package will not run against the new version any longer.

In such a case, the package's `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` must be increased to require the new package version. Then the `PKGREVISION` of all packages `foo` that depend on this package need to be increased, and if they have `buildlink3.mk` files, `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.foo` in their

`buildlink3.mk` files must be increased to the new version as well. This is required so that a package will pull in the versions of the packages that use the new ABI and that the packages' `PKGVERSIONS` uniquely identify the packages built against the new ABI. The `pkgtools/revbump` package can help with these updates.

See Section 21.1.5 for more information about dependencies on other packages, including the `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS` definitions.

Please take careful consideration before adjusting `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` or `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` in a `buildlink3.mk` file as we don't want to cause unneeded package deletions and rebuilds. In many cases, new versions of packages work just fine with older dependencies.

Also, it is not needed to set `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` when it is identical to `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg`.

Note there is also the distinction that users are able to disable enforcement of ABI dependencies using the `USE_ABI_DEPENDS` variable, but there is no equivalent option for API dependencies.

## 18.3. Writing `builtin.mk` files

Some packages in `pkgsrc` install headers and libraries that coincide with headers and libraries present in the base system. Aside from a `buildlink3.mk` file, these packages should also include a `builtin.mk` file that includes the necessary checks to decide whether using the built-in software or the `pkgsrc` software is appropriate.

The only requirements of a `builtin.mk` file for `pkg` are:

1. It should set `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` to either "yes" or "no" after it is included.
2. It should *not* override any `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` which is already set before the `builtin.mk` file is included.
3. It should be written to allow multiple inclusion. This is *very* important and takes careful attention to Makefile coding.

### 18.3.1. Anatomy of a `builtin.mk` file

The following is the recommended template for `builtin.mk` files:

```
.if !defined(IS_BUILTIN.foo)
#
# IS_BUILTIN.foo is set to "yes" or "no" depending on whether "foo"
# genuinely exists in the system or not.
#
IS_BUILTIN.foo?=          no

# BUILTIN_PKG.foo should be set here if "foo" is built-in and its package
# version can be determined.
#
.  if !empty(IS_BUILTIN.foo:M[Y][eE][sS])
BUILTIN_PKG.foo?=        foo-1.0
.  endif
```

```

.endif # IS_BUILTIN.foo

.if !defined(USE_BUILTIN.foo)
USE_BUILTIN.foo?=${IS_BUILTIN.foo}
.  if defined(BUILTIN_PKG.foo)
.    for _depend_ in ${BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.foo}
.      if !empty(USE_BUILTIN.foo:M[yY][eE][sS])
USE_BUILTIN.foo!=
    ${PKG_ADMIN} pmatch '${_depend_}' ${BUILTIN_PKG.foo}
    && ${ECHO} "yes" || ${ECHO} "no"
.      endif
.    endfor
.  endif
.endif # USE_BUILTIN.foo

CHECK_BUILTIN.foo?= no
.if !empty(CHECK_BUILTIN.foo:M[nN][oO])
#
# Here we place code that depends on whether USE_BUILTIN.foo is set to
# "yes" or "no".
#
.endif # CHECK_BUILTIN.foo

```

The first section sets `IS_BUILTIN.pkg` depending on if `pkg` really exists in the base system. This should not be a base system software with similar functionality to `pkg`; it should only be “yes” if the actual package is included as part of the base system. This variable is only used internally within the `builtin.mk` file.

The second section sets `BUILTIN_PKG.pkg` to the version of `pkg` in the base system if it exists (if `IS_BUILTIN.pkg` is “yes”). This variable is only used internally within the `builtin.mk` file.

The third section sets `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` and is *required* in all `builtin.mk` files. The code in this section must make the determination whether the built-in software is adequate to satisfy the dependencies listed in `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg`. This is typically done by comparing `BUILTIN_PKG.pkg` against each of the dependencies in `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg`. `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` *must* be set to the correct value by the end of the `builtin.mk` file. Note that `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` may be “yes” even if `IS_BUILTIN.pkg` is “no” because we may make the determination that the built-in version of the software is similar enough to be used as a replacement.

The last section is guarded by `CHECK_BUILTIN.pkg`, and includes code that uses the value of `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` set in the previous section. This typically includes, e.g., adding additional dependency restrictions and listing additional files to symlink into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}` (via `BUILDLINK_FILES.pkg`).

# Chapter 19.

## *PLIST issues*

---

The `PLIST` file contains a package's "packing list", i.e. a list of files that belong to the package (relative to the `${PREFIX}` directory it's been installed in) plus some additional statements - see the `pkg_create(1)` man page for a full list. This chapter addresses some issues that need attention when dealing with the `PLIST` file (or files, see below!).

### 19.1. RCS ID

Be sure to add a RCS ID line as the first thing in any `PLIST` file you write:

```
@comment $NetBSD $
```

An artificial space has been added between `NetBSD` and `$`, this is a workaround here to prevent `CVS` expanding to the filename of the guide. When adding the RCS ID the space should be omitted.

### 19.2. Semi-automatic `PLIST` generation

You can use the `make print-PLIST` command to output a `PLIST` that matches any new files since the package was extracted. See Section 13.17 for more information on this target.

### 19.3. Tweaking output of `make print-PLIST`

The `PRINT_PLIST_AWK` variable takes a set of `AWK` patterns and actions that are used to filter the output of `print-PLIST`. You can *append* any chunk of `AWK` scripting you like to it, but be careful with quoting.

For example, to get all files inside the `libdata/foo` directory removed from the resulting `PLIST`:

```
PRINT_PLIST_AWK+=      /^libdata\/foo/ { next; }
```

The `PRINT_PLIST_AWK` transformations are evaluated after the file list and directory list are sorted. `EARLY_PRINT_PLIST_AWK` is like `PRINT_PLIST_AWK` except it operates before the file list and directory list are sorted.

### 19.4. Variable substitution in `PLIST`

A number of variables are substituted automatically in `PLIST`s when a package is installed on a system. This includes the following variables:

```

${MACHINE_ARCH}, ${MACHINE_GNU_ARCH}

```

Some packages like emacs and perl embed information about which architecture they were built on into the pathnames where they install their files. To handle this case, PLIST will be preprocessed before actually used, and the symbol “`${MACHINE_ARCH}`” will be replaced by what **uname -p** gives. The same is done if the string `${MACHINE_GNU_ARCH}` is embedded in PLIST somewhere - use this on packages that have GNU autoconf-created configure scripts.

**Legacy note:** There used to be a symbol “`$ARCH`” that was replaced by the output of **uname -m**, but that’s no longer supported and has been removed.

```

${OPSYS}, ${LOWER_OPSYS}, ${OS_VERSION}

```

Some packages want to embed the OS name and version into some paths. To do this, use these variables in the PLIST:

- `${OPSYS}` - output of “**uname -s**”
- `${LOWER_OPSYS}` - lowercase common name (eg. “solaris”)
- `${OS_VERSION}` - “**uname -r**”

For a list of values which are replaced by default, the output of **make help topic=PLIST\_SUBST** as well as searching the `pkgsrc/mk` directory with **grep** for `PLIST_SUBST` should help.

If you want to change other variables not listed above, you can add variables and their expansions to this variable in the following way, similar to `MESSAGE_SUBST` (see Section 12.5):

```

PLIST_SUBST+= SOMEVAR="somevalue"

```

This replaces all occurrences of “`${SOMEVAR}`” in the PLIST with “somevalue”.

The `PLIST_VARS` variable can be used to simplify the common case of conditionally including some PLIST entries. It can be done by adding `PLIST_VARS+=foo` and setting the corresponding `PLIST.foo` variable to `yes` if the entry should be included. This will substitute “`${PLIST.foo}`” in the PLIST with either “” or “`@comment` ”. For example, in Makefile:

```

PLIST_VARS+= foo
.if condition
PLIST.foo= yes
.else

```

And then in PLIST:

```

@comment $NetBSD $
bin/bar
man/man1/bar.1
${PLIST.foo}bin/foo
${PLIST.foo}man/man1/foo.1
${PLIST.foo}share/bar/foo.data

```

An artificial space has been added between NetBSD and \$, this is a workaround here to prevent CVS expanding to the filename of the guide. When adding the RCS ID the space should be omitted.

## 19.5. Man page compression

Man pages should be installed in compressed form if `MANZ` is set (in `bsd.own.mk`), and uncompressed otherwise. To handle this in the `PLIST` file, the suffix “.gz” is appended/removed automatically for man pages according to `MANZ` and `MANCOMPRESSED` being set or not, see above for details. This modification of the `PLIST` file is done on a copy of it, not `PLIST` itself.

## 19.6. Changing PLIST source with `PLIST_SRC`

To use one or more files as source for the `PLIST` used in generating the binary package, set the variable `PLIST_SRC` to the names of that file(s). The files are later concatenated using `cat(1)`, and the order of things is important. The default for `PLIST_SRC` is `${PKGDIR}/PLIST`.

## 19.7. Platform-specific and differing PLISTS

Some packages decide to install a different set of files based on the operating system being used. These differences can be automatically handled by using the following files:

- `PLIST.common`
- `PLIST.${OPSYS}`
- `PLIST.${MACHINE_ARCH}`
- `PLIST.${OPSYS}-${MACHINE_ARCH}`
- `PLIST.common_end`

## 19.8. Build-specific PLISTS

Some packages decide to generate hard-to-guess file names during installation that are hard to wire down.

In such cases, you can set the `GENERATE_PLIST` variable to shell code terminated (with a semicolon) that will output `PLIST` entries which will be appended to the `PLIST`

You can find one example in `editors/xemacs`:

```
GENERATE_PLIST+=          ${ECHO} bin/${DISTNAME}-${WRKSRC}/src/xemacs -sd`.dmp ;
```

which will append something like `bin/xemacs-21.4.23-54e8ea71.dmp` to the `PLIST`.

## 19.9. Sharing directories between packages

A “shared directory” is a directory where multiple (and unrelated) packages install files. These directories were problematic because you had to add special tricks in the `PLIST` to conditionally remove them, or have some centralized package handle them.

In `pkgsrc`, it is now easy: Each package should create directories and install files as needed; `pkg_delete` will remove any directories left empty after uninstalling a package.

If a package needs an empty directory to work, create the directory during installation as usual, and also add an entry to the PLIST:

```
@pkgdir path/to/empty/directory
```

or take a look at `MAKE_DIRS` and `OWN_DIRS`.

## Chapter 20.

# *The pkginstall framework*

---

This chapter describes the framework known as `pkginstall`, whose key features are:

- Generic installation and manipulation of directories and files outside the `pkgsrc`-handled tree, `LOCALBASE`.
- Automatic handling of configuration files during installation, provided that packages are correctly designed.
- Generation and installation of system startup scripts.
- Registration of system users and groups.
- Registration of system shells.
- Automatic updating of fonts databases.

The following sections inspect each of the above points in detail.

You may be thinking that many of the things described here could be easily done with simple code in the package's post-installation target (`post-install`). *This is incorrect*, as the code in them is only executed when building from source. Machines using binary packages could not benefit from it at all (as the code itself could be unavailable). Therefore, the only way to achieve any of the items described above is by means of the installation scripts, which are automatically generated by `pkginstall`.

### 20.1. Files and directories outside the installation prefix

As you already know, the `PLIST` file holds a list of files and directories that belong to a package. The names used in it are relative to the installation prefix (`${PREFIX}`), which means that it cannot register files outside this directory (absolute path names are not allowed). Despite this restriction, some packages need to install files outside this location; e.g., under `${VARBASE}` or `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`. The only way to achieve this is to create such files during installation time by using installation scripts.

The generic installation scripts are shell scripts that can contain arbitrary code. The list of scripts to execute is taken from the `INSTALL_FILE` variable, which defaults to `INSTALL`. A similar variable exists for package removal (`DEINSTALL_FILE`, whose default is `DEINSTALL`). These scripts can run arbitrary commands, so they have the potential to create and manage files anywhere in the file system.

Using these general installation files is not recommended, but may be needed in some special cases. One reason for avoiding them is that the user has to trust the packager that there is no unwanted or simply erroneous code included in the installation script. Also, previously there were many similar scripts for the same functionality, and fixing a common error involved finding and changing all of them.

The `pkginstall` framework offers another, standardized way. It provides generic scripts to abstract the manipulation of such files and directories based on variables set in the package's `Makefile`. The rest of this section describes these variables.

### 20.1.1. Directory manipulation

The following variables can be set to request the creation of directories anywhere in the file system:

- `MAKE_DIRS` and `OWN_DIRS` contain a list of directories that should be created and should attempt to be destroyed by the installation scripts. The difference between the two is that the latter prompts the administrator to remove any directories that may be left after deinstallation (because they were not empty), while the former does not. Example:

```
MAKE_DIRS+=          ${VARBASE}/foo/private
```

- `MAKE_DIRS_PERMS` and `OWN_DIRS_PERMS` contain a list of tuples describing which directories should be created and should attempt to be destroyed by the installation scripts. Each tuple holds the following values, separated by spaces: the directory name, its owner, its group and its numerical mode. For example:

```
MAKE_DIRS_PERMS+=   ${VARBASE}/foo/private \
                    ${REAL_ROOT_USER} ${REAL_ROOT_GROUP} 0700
```

The difference between the two is exactly the same as their non-PERMS counterparts.

### 20.1.2. File manipulation

Creating non-empty files outside the installation prefix is tricky because the `PLIST` forces all files to be inside it. To overcome this problem, the only solution is to extract the file in a known place (i.e., inside the installation prefix) and copy it to the appropriate location during installation (done by the installation scripts generated by *pkginstall*). We will call the former the *reference file* in the following paragraphs, which describe the variables that can be used to automatically and consistently handle files outside the installation prefix:

- `REQD_FILES` is a list of pairs of reference and target files. At installation time, the reference file is copied to the target if and only if the latter does not exist. Upon deinstallation, the reference file is removed provided that it was not modified by the installation.
- `REQD_FILES_PERMS` contains tuples describing reference files and targets, including owner, group, and numeric permissions that should be set. For example:

```
REQD_FILES_PERMS+=  ${PREFIX}/share/somefile ${VARBASE}/somefile \
                    ${REAL_ROOT_USER} ${REAL_ROOT_GROUP} 0700
```

- `CONF_FILES` and `CONF_FILES_PERMS` have the same syntax as `REQD_FILES` and `REQD_FILES_PERMS` respectively. The difference is that these variables are specifically intended for handling configuration files, for which additional conventions and constraints apply. See Section 20.2 for further discussion. Note in particular that while handling of configuration files can be disabled by the user (see Section 20.2.5), this setting does not affect `REQD_FILES` and `REQD_FILES_PERMS`.

To install an empty file, one can use these macros and `/dev/null` as the reference file.

## 20.2. Configuration files

There are two principles that govern the handling of configuration files in `pkgsrc`: first, the user's configuration must not be lost or overwritten by upgrades or reinstallations; and second, the default configuration should always be available for reference. To that end, `pkgsrc` has a framework specifically for handling configuration files. In general, configuration files are installed into `${PREFIX}/share/examples`, and copied from there to the pertinent `etc` directory as a separate step and only as needed.

To make this work, there are three things that need to happen, any of which may require patching. First, the package must be told to read its configuration from the correct place at runtime; this place is `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}` (or possibly a subdirectory of it) which is often but not always `${PREFIX}/etc`. Second, the package must be taught to install its default configuration files in `${PREFIX}/share/examples/${PKGBASE}`; this is the point at which patching often becomes required because it is not the same place as the runtime location. Third, the configuration files need to be declared in the package makefile; this is the easy part.

With those elements in place, the right things will happen: the package install phase and resulting binary package will not touch `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`, and the default configuration will be copied into place by the `pkgsrc` framework only if not already present. Similarly, upon `deinstall` the configuration will not be removed if it has been modified. (This means that in the case of reinstallation and upgrades, unmodified configuration files are updated but modifications are never discarded.)

The following sections describe how to make these things happen and document other relevant knobs available in the `pkgsrc` infrastructure.

### 20.2.1. How `PKG_SYSCONFDIR` is set

As said before, the `PKG_SYSCONFDIR` variable specifies where configuration files shall be installed. Its contents are set based upon the following variables:

- `PKG_SYSCONFBASE`: The configuration's root directory. Defaults to `${PREFIX}/etc` although it may be overridden by the user to point to their preferred location (e.g., `/etc`, `/etc/pkg`, etc.). Packages must not use it directly.
- `PKG_SYSCONFSUBDIR`: A subdirectory of `PKG_SYSCONFBASE` under which the configuration files for the package being built shall be installed. The definition of this variable only makes sense in the package's `Makefile` (i.e., it is not user-customizable).

As an example, consider the Apache package, `www/apache24`, which places its configuration files under the `httpd/` subdirectory of `PKG_SYSCONFBASE`. This should be set in the package `Makefile`.

- `PKG_SYSCONFVAR`: Specifies the name of the variable that holds this package's configuration directory (if different from `PKG_SYSCONFBASE`). It defaults to `PKGBASE`'s value, and is always prefixed with `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`.
- `PKG_SYSCONFDIR.${PKG_SYSCONFVAR}`: Holds the directory where the configuration files for the package identified by `PKG_SYSCONFVAR`'s shall be placed.

Based on the above variables, `pkginstall` determines the value of `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`, which is the *only* variable that may be used within a package to refer to its configuration directory. The algorithm used to set its value is basically the following:

1. If `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`.`{PKG_SYSCONFVAR}` is set, its value is used.
2. If the previous variable is not defined but `PKG_SYSCONFSUBDIR` is set in the package's Makefile, the resulting value is `{PKG_SYSCONFBASE}/{PKG_SYSCONFSUBDIR}`.
3. Otherwise, it is set to `{PKG_SYSCONFBASE}`.

It is worth mentioning that `{PKG_SYSCONFDIR}` is automatically added to `OWN_DIRS`. This causes it to be automatically created if needed. See Section 20.1.1 for further details. This does not apply to subdirectories of `{PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`; they must be manually created with `OWN_DIRS` or `MAKE_DIRS`.

## 20.2.2. Telling the software where configuration files are

Given that `pkgsrc` (and users!) expect configuration files to be in a known place, you need to teach each package where to install its files. In some cases you will have to patch the package Makefiles to achieve it. If you are lucky, though, it may be as easy as passing an extra flag to the configuration script. This is the case for packages using GNU autoconf:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --sysconfdir=${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}
```

Note that this specifies where the package has to *look for* its configuration files, not where they will be installed. Fortunately, there is a different way to specify the latter, as seen in the next section, although the combination is rather confusing at first glance.

## 20.2.3. Patching installation

As discussed above, **packages themselves must not touch the contents of `{PKG_SYSCONFDIR}` directly**. Bad news is that many software installation scripts will, out of the box, mess with the contents of that directory. So what is the correct procedure to fix this issue?

You must teach the package (usually by manually patching it) to install any configuration files under the examples hierarchy, `share/examples/{PKGBASE}/`. This way, the `PLIST` registers them and the administrator always has the original copies available.

It turns out that for packages using GNU autoconf it is possible to create the desired effect by setting `sysconfdir` on the make command line at install time. Consider this example taken from `mail/mutt`:

```
EGDIR=                ${PREFIX}/share/examples/mutt
INSTALL_MAKE_FLAGS=  ${MAKE_FLAGS} sysconfdir=${EGDIR}
```

Note that the `EGDIR` variable, though commonly used for this purpose, is local to that package and has no meaning outside it.

## 20.2.4. Declaring configuration files

Once the required configuration files are in place (i.e., under the examples hierarchy), the `pkginstall` framework can use them as reference copies during the package installation to update what is in `{PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`. To achieve this, the variables `CONF_FILES` and `CONF_FILES_PERMS` are used. Check out Section 20.1.2 for further information about their syntax and their purpose. Here is an example, taken from the `mail/mutt` package:

```
EGDIR=                ${PREFIX}/share/examples/mutt
CONF_FILES=          ${EGDIR}/Muttrc ${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}/Muttrc
```

Note that (as in the previous section's example) the `EGDIR` variable is specific to the package and has no meaning outside it.

For reference, the complete example from Mutt is as follows:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=      --sysconfdir=${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}
EGDIR=                ${PREFIX}/share/examples/mutt
CONF_FILES=          ${EGDIR}/Muttrc ${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}/Muttrc
INSTALLATION_DIRS+=  ${EGDIR}
INSTALL_MAKE_FLAGS=   ${MAKE_FLAGS} sysconfdir=${EGDIR}
```

### 20.2.5. Disabling handling of configuration files

The automatic copying of config files can be toggled by setting the environment variable `PKG_CONFIG` prior to package installation.

## 20.3. System startup scripts

System startup scripts are special files because they must be installed in a place known by the underlying OS, usually outside the installation prefix. Therefore, the same rules described in Section 20.1 apply, and the same solutions can be used. However, *pkginstall* provides a special mechanism to handle these files.

In order to provide system startup scripts, the package has to:

1. Store the script inside `${FILESDIR}`, with the `.sh` suffix appended. Considering the `print/cups-base` package as an example, it has a `cupsd.sh` in its files directory.
2. Tell *pkginstall* to handle it, appending the name of the script, without its extension, to the `RCD_SCRIPTS` variable. Continuing the previous example:

```
RCD_SCRIPTS+= cupsd
```

Once this is done, *pkginstall* will do the following steps for each script in an automated fashion:

1. Process the file found in the files directory applying all the substitutions described in the `FILES_SUBST` variable.
2. Copy the script from the files directory to the examples hierarchy, `${PREFIX}/share/examples/rc.d/`. Note that this reference file must be explicitly registered in the `PLIST`.
3. Add code to the installation scripts to copy the startup script from the examples hierarchy into the system-wide startup scripts directory.

### 20.3.1. Disabling handling of system startup scripts

The automatic copying of config files can be toggled by setting the environment variable `PKG_RCD_SCRIPTS` prior to package installation. Note that the scripts will be always copied inside the examples hierarchy, `/${PREFIX}/share/examples/rc.d/`, no matter what the value of this variable is.

## 20.4. System users and groups

If a package needs to create special users and/or groups during installation, it can do so by using the *pkginstall* framework.

Users can be created by adding entries to the `PKG_USERS` variable. Each entry has the following syntax:

```
user:group
```

Further specification of user details may be done by setting per-user variables. `PKG_UID.user` is the numeric UID for the user. `PKG_GECOS.user` is the user's description or comment. `PKG_HOME.user` is the user's home directory, and defaults to `/nonexistent` if not specified. `PKG_SHELL.user` is the user's shell, and defaults to `/sbin/nologin` if not specified.

Similarly, groups can be created by adding entries to the `PKG_GROUPS` variable, whose syntax is:

```
group
```

The numeric GID of the group may be set by defining `PKG_GID.group`.

If a package needs to create the users and groups at an earlier stage, then it can set `USERGROUP_PHASE` to either `configure`, `build`, or `pre-install` to indicate the phase before which the users and groups are created. In this case, the numeric UIDs and GIDs of the created users and groups are automatically hardcoded into the final installation scripts.

## 20.5. System shells

Packages that install system shells should register them in the shell database, `/etc/shells`, to make things easier to the administrator. This must be done from the installation scripts to keep binary packages working on any system. *pkginstall* provides an easy way to accomplish this task.

When a package provides a shell interpreter, it has to set the `PKG_SHELL` variable to its absolute file name. This will add some hooks to the installation scripts to handle it. Consider the following example, taken from `shells/zsh`:

```
PKG_SHELL=      ${PREFIX}/bin/zsh
```

### 20.5.1. Disabling shell registration

The automatic registration of shell interpreters can be disabled by the administrator by setting the `PKG_REGISTER_SHELLS` environment variable to `NO`.

## 20.6. Fonts

Packages that install X11 fonts should update the database files that index the fonts within each fonts directory. This can easily be accomplished within the *pkginstall* framework.

When a package installs X11 fonts, it must list the directories in which fonts are installed in the `FONTSDIRS.type` variables, where *type* can be one of “ttf”, “type1” or “x11”. This will add hooks to the installation scripts to run the appropriate commands to update the fonts database files within each of those directories. For convenience, if the directory path is relative, it is taken to be relative to the package’s installation prefix. Consider the following example, taken from `fonts/dbz-ttf`:

```
FONTSDIRS.ttf= ${PREFIX}/share/fonts/X11/TTF
```

### 20.6.1. Disabling automatic update of the fonts databases

The automatic update of fonts databases can be disabled by the administrator by setting the `PKG_UPDATE_FONTS_DB` environment variable to `NO`.

## Chapter 21.

# *Making your package work*

---

### 21.1. General operation

One appealing feature of `pkgsrc` is that it runs on many different platforms. As a result, it is important to ensure, where possible, that packages in `pkgsrc` are portable. This chapter mentions some particular details you should pay attention to while working on `pkgsrc`.

#### 21.1.1. How to pull in user-settable variables from `mk.conf`

The `pkgsrc` user can configure `pkgsrc` by overriding several variables in the file pointed to by `MAKECONF`, which is `mk.conf` by default. When you want to use those variables in the preprocessor directives of `make(1)` (for example `.if` or `.for`), you need to include the file `../.. /mk/bsd.prefs.mk` before, which in turn loads the user preferences.

But note that some variables may not be completely defined after `../.. /mk/bsd.prefs.mk` has been included, as they may contain references to variables that are not yet defined. In shell commands (the lines in `Makefile` that are indented with a tab) this is no problem, since variables are only expanded when they are used. But in the preprocessor directives mentioned above and in dependency lines (of the form `target: dependencies`) the variables are expanded at load time.

**Note:** To check whether a variable can be used at load time, run `pkglint -Wall` on your package.

#### 21.1.2. User interaction

Occasionally, packages require interaction from the user, and this can be in a number of ways:

- When fetching the distfiles, some packages require user interaction such as entering username/password or accepting a license on a web page.
- When extracting the distfiles, some packages may ask for passwords.
- help to configure the package before it is built
- help during the build process
- help during the installation of a package

A package can set the `INTERACTIVE_STAGE` variable to define which stages need interaction. This should be done in the package's `Makefile`, e.g.:

```
INTERACTIVE_STAGE=      configure install
```

The user can then decide to skip this package by setting the `BATCH` variable. Packages that require interaction are also excluded from bulk builds.

### 21.1.3. Handling licenses

Authors of software can choose the licence under which software can be copied. The Free Software Foundation has declared some licenses "Free", and the Open Source Initiative has a definition of "Open Source".

By default, `pkgsrc` allows packages with Free or Open Source licenses to be built. To allow packages with other licenses to be built as well, the `pkgsrc` user needs to add these licenses to the `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable in `mk.conf`. Note that this variable only affects which packages may be *built*, while the license terms often also restrict the actual use of the package and its redistribution.

One might want to only install packages with a BSD license, or the GPL, and not the other. The free licenses are added to the default `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable. The `pkgsrc` user can override the default by setting the `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable with "=" instead of "+=". The licenses accepted by default are defined in the `DEFAULT_ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable in the file `pkgsrc/mk/license.mk`.

The license tag mechanism is intended to address copyright-related issues surrounding building, installing and using a package, and not to address redistribution issues (see `RESTRICTED` and `NO_SRC_ON_FTP`, etc.). Packages with redistribution restrictions should set these tags.

Denoting that a package may be copied according to a particular license is done by placing the license in `pkgsrc/licenses` and setting the `LICENSE` variable to a string identifying the license, e.g. in `graphics/xv`:

```
LICENSE=          xv-license
```

When trying to build, the user will get a notice that the package is covered by a license which has not been placed in the `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable:

```
% make
===> xv-3.10anb9 has an unacceptable license: xv-license.
===>   To view the license, enter "/usr/bin/make show-license".
===>   To indicate acceptance, add this line to your /etc/mk.conf:
===>   ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES+=xv-license
*** Error code 1
```

In case a package requires multiple licenses, you can add all of them to the `LICENSE` variable, connected with the upper-case keyword `AND`. If the user has a choice between multiple licenses, you can add them connected with the upper-case keyword `OR`, for example:

```
LICENSE=          isc AND apache-2.0
LICENSE=          2-clause-bsd OR ruby-license
```

The license can be viewed with `make show-license`, and if the user so chooses, the line printed above can be added to `mk.conf` to convey to `pkgsrc` that it should not in the future fail because of that license:

```
ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES+=xv-license
```

The use of `LICENSE=shareware`, `LICENSE=no-commercial-use`, and similar language is deprecated because it does not crisply refer to a particular license text. Another problem with such usage is that it does not enable a user to tell `pkgsrc` to proceed for a single package without also telling `pkgsrc` to proceed for all packages with that tag.

### 21.1.3.1. Adding a package with a new license

When adding a package with a new license, the following steps are required:

1. Check whether the license qualifies as Free or Open Source by referencing [Various Licenses and Comments about Them](https://www.gnu.org/licenses/license-list.en.html) (<https://www.gnu.org/licenses/license-list.en.html>) and [Licenses by Name](https://opensource.org/licenses/alphabeticlist) | Open Source Initiative (<https://opensource.org/licenses/alphabeticlist>). If this is the case, the filename in `pkgsrc/licenses/` does not need the `-license` suffix, and the license name should be added to:
  - `DEFAULT_ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` in `pkgsrc/mk/license.mk`
  - `default_acceptable_licenses` in `pkgsrc/pkgtools/pkg_install/files/lib/license.c`
2. The license text should be added to `pkgsrc/licenses` for displaying. A list of known licenses can be seen in this directory.

### 21.1.3.2. Change to the license

When the license changes (in a way other than formatting), make sure that the new license has a different name (e.g., append the version number if it exists, or the date). Just because a user told `pkgsrc` to build programs under a previous version of a license does not mean that `pkgsrc` should build programs under the new licenses. The higher-level point is that `pkgsrc` does not evaluate licenses for reasonableness; the only test is a mechanistic test of whether a particular text has been approved by either of two bodies (FSF or OSI).

### 21.1.4. Restricted packages

Some licenses restrict how software may be re-distributed. By declaring the restrictions, package tools can automatically refrain from e.g. placing binary packages on FTP sites.

There are four possible restrictions, which are the cross product of sources (distfiles) and binaries not being placed on FTP sites and CD-ROMs. Because this is rarely the exact language in any license, and because non-Free licenses tend to be different from each other, `pkgsrc` adopts a definition of FTP and CD-ROM. "FTP" means making the source or binary file available over the Internet at no charge. "CD-ROM" means making the source or binary available on some kind of media, together with other source and binary packages, which is sold for a distribution charge.

In order to encode these restrictions, the package system defines five make variables that can be set to note these restrictions:

- `RESTRICTED`

This variable should be set whenever a restriction exists (regardless of its kind). Set this variable to a string containing the reason for the restriction. It should be understood that those wanting to understand the restriction will have to read the license, and perhaps seek advice of counsel.

- `NO_BIN_ON_CDROM`

Binaries may not be placed on CD-ROM containing other binary packages, for which a distribution charge may be made. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`.

- `NO_BIN_ON_FTP`

Binaries may not be made available on the Internet without charge. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`. If this variable is set, binary packages will not be included on `ftp.NetBSD.org`.

- `NO_SRC_ON_CDROM`

Distfiles may not be placed on CD-ROM, together with other distfiles, for which a fee may be charged. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`.

- `NO_SRC_ON_FTP`

Distfiles may not be made available via FTP at no charge. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`. If this variable is set, the distfile(s) will not be mirrored on `ftp.NetBSD.org`.

Please note that packages will be removed from `pkgsrc` when the distfiles are not distributable and cannot be obtained for a period of one full quarter branch. Packages with manual/interactive fetch must have a maintainer and it is his/her responsibility to ensure this.

### 21.1.5. Handling dependencies

Your package may depend on some other package being present, and there are various ways of expressing this dependency. `pkgsrc` supports the `DEPENDS`, `BUILD_DEPENDS`, `TOOL_DEPENDS`, and `TEST_DEPENDS` definitions, the `USE_TOOLS` definition, as well as dependencies via `buildlink3.mk`, which is the preferred way to handle dependencies, and which uses the variables named above. See Chapter 18 for more information.

The basic difference is that the `DEPENDS` definition registers that pre-requisite in the binary package so it will be pulled in when the binary package is later installed, whilst the `BUILD_DEPENDS`, `TOOL_DEPENDS`, and `TEST_DEPENDS` definitions do not, marking a dependency that is only needed for building or testing the resulting package. See also Chapter 14 for more information.

This means that if you only need a package present whilst you are building or testing, it should be noted as a `TOOL_DEPENDS`, `BUILD_DEPENDS`, or `TEST_DEPENDS`. When cross-compiling, `TOOL_DEPENDS` are *native* packages, i.e. packages for the architecture where the package is built; `BUILD_DEPENDS` are *target* packages, i.e., packages for the architecture for which the package is built.

The format for a `DEPENDS`, `BUILD_DEPENDS`, `TOOL_DEPENDS`, and `TEST_DEPENDS` definition is:

```
<pre-req-package-name>:../../<category>/<pre-req-package>
```

Please note that the “pre-req-package-name” may include any of the wildcard version numbers recognized by `pkg_info(1)`.

1. If your package needs another package’s binaries or libraries to build and run, and if that package has a `buildlink3.mk` file available, use it:

```
.include "../..//graphics/jpeg/buildlink3.mk"
```

2. If your package needs another package's binaries or libraries only for building, and if that package has a `buildlink3.mk` file available, use it:

```
.include "../..//graphics/jpeg/buildlink3.mk"
```

but set `BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD.jpeg?=build` to make it a build dependency only. This case is rather rare.

3. If your package needs binaries from another package to build, use the `TOOL_DEPENDS` definition:

```
TOOL_DEPENDS+= itstool-[0-9]*:../..//textproc/itstool
```

4. If your package needs static libraries to link against, header files to include, etc. from another package to build, use the `BUILD_DEPENDS` definition.
5. If your package needs a library with which to link and there is no `buildlink3.mk` file available, create one. Using `DEPENDS` won't be sufficient because the include files and libraries will be hidden from the compiler.

6. If your package needs some executable to be able to run correctly and if there's no `buildlink3.mk` file, this is specified using the `DEPENDS` variable. The `print/lyx` package needs to be able to execute the latex binary from the `tex-latex-bin` package when it runs, and that is specified:

```
DEPENDS+= tex-latex-bin-[0-9]*:../..//print/tex-latex-bin
```

7. If your package includes a test suite that has extra dependencies only required for this purpose (frequently this can be run as a "make test" target), use the `TEST_DEPENDS` variable.
8. You can use wildcards in package dependencies. Note that such wildcard dependencies are retained when creating binary packages. The dependency is checked when installing the binary package and any package which matches the pattern will be used. Wildcard dependencies should be used with care.

The `"-[0-9]*"` should be used instead of `"-*"` to avoid potentially ambiguous matches such as `"tk-postgresql"` matching a `"tk-*"` `DEPENDS`.

Wildcards can also be used to specify that a package will only build against a certain minimum version of a pre-requisite:

```
DEPENDS+= ImageMagick>=6.0:../..//graphics/ImageMagick
```

This means that the package will build using version 6.0 of ImageMagick or newer. Such a dependency may be warranted if, for example, the command line options of an executable have changed.

If you need to depend on minimum versions of libraries, set `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` to the appropriate pattern before including its `buildlink3.mk` file, e.g.

```
BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.jpeg+= jpeg>=9.0
.include "../..//graphics/jpeg/buildlink3.mk"
```

For security fixes, please update the package vulnerabilities file. See Section 21.1.9 for more information.

If your package needs files from another package to build, add the relevant distribution files to `DISTFILES`, so they will be extracted automatically. See the `print/ghostscript` package for an example. (It relies on the jpeg sources being present in source form during the build.)

### 21.1.6. Handling conflicts with other packages

Your package may conflict with other packages users might already have installed on their system, e.g., if your package installs the same set of files as another package in the pkgsrc tree.

For example, `x11/libXaw3d` and `x11/Xaw-Xpm` install the same shared library, thus you set in `pkgsrc/x11/libXaw3d/Makefile`:

```
CONFLICTS=      Xaw-Xpm-[0-9]*
```

and in `pkgsrc/x11/Xaw-Xpm/Makefile`:

```
CONFLICTS=      libXaw3d-[0-9]*
```

`pkg_add(1)` is able to detect attempts to install packages that conflict with existing packages and abort. However, in many situations this is too late in the process. Binary package managers will not know about the conflict until they attempt to install the package after already downloading it and all its dependencies. Users may also waste time building a package and its dependencies only to find out at the end that it conflicts with another package they have installed.

To avoid these issues `CONFLICTS` entries should be added in all cases where it is known that packages conflict with each other. These `CONFLICTS` entries are exported in `pkg_summary(5)` files and consumed by binary package managers to inform users that packages cannot be installed onto the target system.

### 21.1.7. Packages that cannot or should not be built

There are several reasons why a package might be instructed to not build under certain circumstances. If the package builds and runs on most platforms, the exceptions should be noted with `BROKEN_ON_PLATFORM`. If the package builds and runs on a small handful of platforms, set `BROKEN_EXCEPT_ON_PLATFORM` instead. Both `BROKEN_ON_PLATFORM` and `BROKEN_EXCEPT_ON_PLATFORM` are OS triples (OS-version-platform) that can use glob-style wildcards.

If a package is not appropriate for some platforms (as opposed to merely broken), a different set of variables should be used as this affects failure reporting and statistics. If the package is appropriate for most platforms, the exceptions should be noted with `NOT_FOR_PLATFORM`. If the package is appropriate for only a small handful of platforms (often exactly one), set `ONLY_FOR_PLATFORM` instead. Both `ONLY_FOR_PLATFORM` and `NOT_FOR_PLATFORM` are OS triples (OS-version-platform) that can use glob-style wildcards.

Some packages are tightly bound to a specific version of an operating system, e.g. LKMs or `sysutils/lsof`. Such binary packages are not backwards compatible with other versions of the OS, and should be uploaded to a version specific directory on the FTP server. Mark these packages by setting `OSVERSION_SPECIFIC` to “yes”. This variable is not currently used by any of the package system internals, but may be used in the future.

If the package should be skipped (for example, because it provides functionality already provided by the system), set `PKG_SKIP_REASON` to a descriptive message. If the package should fail because some preconditions are not met, set `PKG_FAIL_REASON` to a descriptive message.

### 21.1.8. Packages which should not be deleted, once installed

To ensure that a package may not be deleted, once it has been installed, the `PKG_PRESERVE` definition should be set in the package Makefile. This will be carried into any binary package that is made from this `pkgsrc` entry. A “preserved” package will not be deleted using `pkg_delete(1)` unless the “-F” option is used.

### 21.1.9. Handling packages with security problems

When a vulnerability is found, this should be noted in `pkgsrc/doc/pkg-vulnerabilities`. Entries in that file consist of three parts:

- package version pattern
- type of vulnerability (please cut’n’paste an existing one where possible)
- URL providing additional information about the issue

For the package version pattern please always use ‘<’ to mark an upper bound (not ‘<=’!). This will avoid possible problems due unrelated `PKGREVISION` bumps not related to security fixes. Lower bounds can be added too, using ‘>’ or ‘>=’. For example, “`foo>=1<1.2`” would mark versions 1.0 (included) to 1.2 (excluded) of “`foo`” as affected by the security issue.

Entries should always be added at the bottom of the file.

When fixing packages, please modify the upper bound of the corresponding entry. To continue the previous example, if a fix was backported to version 1.1nb2, change the previous pattern to “`foo>=1<1.1nb2`”.

To locally test a package version pattern against a `PKGNAME` you can use the `pkg_admin pmatch` command.

The URL should be as permanent as possible and provide as much information about the issue as possible. CVE entries are preferred.

After committing that file, ask `pkgsrc-security@NetBSD.org` to update the file on `ftp.NetBSD.org`.

After fixing the vulnerability by a patch, its `PKGREVISION` should be increased (this is of course not necessary if the problem is fixed by using a newer release of the software), and the pattern in the `pkg-vulnerabilities` file must be updated.

Also, if the fix should be applied to the stable `pkgsrc` branch, be sure to submit a pullup request!

Binary packages already on `ftp.NetBSD.org` will be handled semi-automatically by a weekly cron job.

In case a security issue is disputed, please contact `pkgsrc-security@NetBSD.org`.

### 21.1.10. How to handle incrementing versions when fixing an existing package

When making fixes to an existing package it can be useful to change the version number in `PKGNAME`. To avoid conflicting with future versions by the original author, a “nb1”, “nb2”, ... suffix can be used on package versions by setting `PKGREVISION=1` (2, ...). The “nb” is treated like a “.” by the package tools. e.g.

```
DISTNAME=      foo-17.42
PKGREVISION=   9
```

will result in a `PKGNAME` of “foo-17.42nb9”. If you want to use the original value of `PKGNAME` without the “nbX” suffix, e.g. for setting `DIST_SUBDIR`, use `PKGNAME_NOREV`.

When a new release of the package is released, the `PKGREVISION` should be removed, e.g. on a new minor release of the above package, things should be like:

```
DISTNAME=      foo-17.43
```

`PKGREVISION` should be incremented for any non-trivial change in the resulting binary package. Without a `PKGREVISION` bump, someone with the previous version installed has no way of knowing that their package is out of date. Thus, changes without increasing `PKGREVISION` are essentially labeled “this is so trivial that no reasonable person would want to upgrade”, and this is the rough test for when increasing `PKGREVISION` is appropriate. Examples of changes that do not merit increasing `PKGREVISION` are:

- Changing `HOMEPAGE`, `MAINTAINER`, `OWNER`, or comments in `Makefile`.
- Changing build variables if the resulting binary package is the same.
- Changing `DESCR`.
- Adding `PKG_OPTIONS` if the default options don’t change.

Examples of changes that do merit an increase to `PKGREVISION` include:

- Security fixes
- Changes or additions to a patch file
- Changes to the `PLIST`
- A dependency is changed or renamed.

`PKGREVISION` must also be incremented when dependencies have ABI changes.

### 21.1.11. Substituting variable text in the package files (the `SUBST` framework)

When you want to replace the same text in multiple files, or multiple times in the same file, it is cumbersome to maintain a patch file for this. This is where the `SUBST` framework steps in. It provides an easy-to-use interface for replacing text in files. It just needs the following information:

- In which phase of the package build cycle should the replacement happen?
- In which files should the replacement happen?
- Which text should be replaced with what?

This information is encoded in a block of `SUBST` variables. A minimal example is:

```
SUBST_CLASSES+=      paths
SUBST_STAGE.paths=   pre-configure
SUBST_FILES.paths=   src/*.c
```

```
SUBST_SED.paths=      -e 's,/usr/local,${PREFIX},g'
```

Translated into English, it means: In the pre-configure stage (that is, after applying the patches from the `patches/` directory and before running the configure script and the portability check), replace the text `/usr/local` with the content of the variable `PREFIX`.

Each `SUBST` block starts by appending an identifier to `SUBST_CLASSES` (note the `+=`). This identifier can be chosen freely by the package. If there should ever be duplicate identifiers, the `pkgsrc` infrastructure will catch this and fail early, so don't worry about name collisions.

Except for `SUBST_CLASSES`, all variables in a `SUBST` block are parameterized using this identifier. In the remainder of this section, these parameterized variables are written as `SUBST_STAGE.*`.

```
SUBST_CLASSES+=      paths
SUBST_STAGE.paths=   pre-configure
SUBST_MESSAGE.paths= Fixing absolute paths.
SUBST_FILES.paths=   src/*.c
SUBST_FILES.paths+=  scripts/*.sh
SUBST_SED.paths=     -e 's, "/usr/local, "${PREFIX}, g'
SUBST_SED.paths+=    -e 's, "/var/log, "${VARBASE}/log, g'
SUBST_VARS.paths=    LOCALBASE PREFIX PKGVERSION
```

To get a complete picture about the `SUBST` substitutions, run **`bmake show-all-subst`**. If something doesn't work as expected, run `pkglint` on the package, which detects several typical mistakes surrounding the `SUBST` blocks. For any questions that might remain after this, have a look at `mk/subst.mk`.

#### 21.1.11.1. Choosing the time where the substitutions happen

The `SUBST_STAGE.*` is one of `{pre,do,post}`-`{extract,patch,configure,build,test,install}`. Of these, `pre-configure` is used most often, by far. The most popular stages are, in chronological order:

`post-extract`

The substitutions are applied immediately after the distfiles are extracted. Running **`bmake extract`** on the package will leave no traces of the original files.

When the substitution applies to files for which there is also a patch in the `patches/` directory, this means that the patches will be computed based on the result of the substitution. When these patches are sent to the upstream maintainer later, to be fixed in the upstream package, these patches may no longer match what the upstream author is used to. Because of this, `pre-configure` is often a better choice.

`pre-configure`

The substitutions are applied after the patches from the `patches/` directory. This makes it possible to run **`bmake patch`** on the package, after which the patches can be edited using the tools `pkgvi` and `mkpatches` from the `pkgtools/pkgdiff` package.

When updating the patches, it is helpful to explicitly separate the **`bmake patch`** from the **`bmake configure`**, and to only edit the patches between these commands. Otherwise the substitutions from the `SUBST` block will end up in the patch file. When this happens in really obvious ways, `pkglint` will complain about patches that contain a hard-coded `/usr/pkg` instead of the correct and intended `@PREFIX@`, but it can only detect these really obvious cases.

`do-configure`

This stage should only be used if the package defines a `pre-configure` action itself, and the substitution must happen after that. Typical examples are packages that use the `pre-configure` stage to regenerate the GNU configure script from `configure.ac`.

`post-configure`

This stage is used to fix up any mistakes by the configure stage.

`pre-build`

This stage should only be used for substitutions that are clearly related to building the package, not for fixing the configuration. Substitutions for pathnames (such as replacing `/usr/local` with `${PREFIX}`) or user names (such as replacing `@MY_USER@` with the actual username) belong in `pre-configure` or `post-configure` instead.

`post-build`

Just as with `pre-build`, this stage should only be used for substitutions that are clearly related to building the package, not for fixing the configuration. Substitutions for pathnames (such as replacing `/usr/local` with `${PREFIX}`) or user names (such as replacing `@MY_USER@` with the actual username) belong in `pre-configure` or `post-configure` instead.

A typical use is to update `pkg-config` files to include the `rpath` compiler options.

`pre-install`

In general, the install phase should be as simple as possible. As with the `pre-build` and `post-build` stages, it should not be used to fix pathnames or user names, these belong in `pre-configure` instead. There are only few legitimate use cases for applying substitutions in this stage.

**21.1.11.2. Choosing the files where the substitutions happen**

The `SUBST_FILES.*` variable contains a list of filename patterns. These patterns are relative to `WRKSRC` since that is where most substitutions happen. A typical example is:

```
SUBST_FILES.path=      Makefile */Makefile */*/Makefile *.[ch]
```

The above patterns, especially the last, are quite broad. The `SUBST` implementation checks that each filename pattern that is mentioned here has an effect. For example, if none of the `*/*/Makefile` files contains the patterns to be found and substituted, that filename pattern is redundant and should be left out. By default, the `SUBST` framework will complain with an error message. If the text to be substituted occurs in some of the files from a single pattern, but not in all of them, that is totally ok, and the `SUBST` framework will only print an `INFO` message for those files.

If there is a good reason for having redundant filename patterns, set `SUBST_NOOP_OK.*` to `yes`.

Another popular way of choosing the files for the substitutions is via a shell command, like this:

```
C_FILES_CMD=          cd ${WRKSRC} && ${FIND} . -name '*.c'
SUBST_FILES.path=     ${C_FILES_CMD:sh}
```

The variable name `C_FILES_CMD` in this example is freely chosen and independent of the `SUBST` framework.

In this variant, the `SUBST_FILES.*` variable lists each file individually. Thereby chances are higher that there are filename patterns in which no substitution happens. Since the `SUBST` framework cannot know whether the filename patterns in `SUBST_FILES.*` have been explicitly listed in the Makefile (where any redundant filename pattern would be suspicious) or been generated by a shell command (in which redundant filename patterns are more likely and to be expected), it will complain about these redundant filename patterns. Therefore, `SUBST` blocks that use a shell command to generate the list of filename patterns often need to set `SUBST_NOOP_OK.*` to `yes`.

### 21.1.11.3. Choosing what to substitute

In most cases, the substitutions are given using one or more `sed(1)` commands, like this:

```
SUBST_SED.path=          -e 's|/usr/local|${PREFIX}|g'
```

Each of the `sed` commands needs to be preceded by the `-e` option and should be specified on a line of its own, to avoid hiding short `sed` commands at the end of a line.

Since the `sed` commands often contain shell metacharacters as the separator (the `|` in the above example), it is common to enclose them in single quotes.

A common substitution is to replace placeholders of the form `@VARIABLE@` with their `pkgsrc` counterpart variable `${VARIABLE}`. A typical example is:

```
SUBST_VARS.path=        PREFIX
```

This type of substitutions is typically done by the GNU `configure` scripts during the `do-configure` stage, but in some cases these need to be overridden. The same pattern is also used when a package defines patches that replace previously hard-coded paths like `/usr/local` with a `@PREFIX@` placeholder first, which then gets substituted by the actual `${PREFIX}` in the `pre-configure` stage. In many of these cases, it works equally well to just use the `SUBST` framework to directly replace `/usr/local` with `${PREFIX}`, thereby omitting the intermediate patch file.

If the above is not flexible enough, it is possible to not use `sed` at all for the substitution but to specify an entirely different command, like this:

```
SUBST_FILTER_CMD.path=  LC_ALL=C ${TR} -d '\r'
```

This is used for the few remaining packages in which the distributed files use Windows-style line endings that need to be converted to UNIX-style line endings.

### 21.1.11.4. Other `SUBST` variables

When a `SUBST` block is applied during a package build, a message is logged. The default message is fine for most purposes but can be overridden by setting `SUBST_MESSAGE.*` to an individual message.

## 21.2. The *fetch* phase

### 21.2.1. Packages whose distfiles aren't available for plain downloading

If you need to download from a dynamic URL you can set `DYNAMIC_MASTER_SITES` and a **make fetch** will call `files/getsite.sh` with the name of each file to download as an argument, expecting it to output the URL of the directory from which to download it. `graphics/ns-cult3d` is an example of this usage.

If the download can't be automated, because the user must submit personal information to apply for a password, or must pay for the source, or whatever, you can set `FETCH_MESSAGE` to a list of lines that are displayed to the user before aborting the build. Example:

```
FETCH_MESSAGE= "Please download the files"
FETCH_MESSAGE+= "    ${DISTFILES:Q}"
FETCH_MESSAGE+= "manually from ${MASTER_SITES:Q}."
```

### 21.2.2. How to handle modified distfiles with the 'old' name

Sometimes authors of a software package make some modifications after the software was released, and they put up a new distfile without changing the package's version number. If a package is already in `pkgsrc` at that time, the checksum will no longer match. The contents of the new distfile should be compared against the old one before changing anything, to make sure the distfile was really updated on purpose, and that no trojan horse or so crept in. Please mention that the distfiles were compared and what was found in your commit message.

Then, the correct way to work around this is to set `DIST_SUBDIR` to a unique directory name, usually based on `PKGNAME_NOREV` (but take care with `python` or `ruby` packages, where `PKGNAME` includes a variable prefix). All `DISTFILES` and `PATCHFILES` for this package will be put in that subdirectory of the local distfiles directory. (See Section 21.1.10 for more details.) In case this happens more often, `PKGNAME` can be used (thus including the `nbX` suffix) or a date stamp can be appended, like `${PKGNAME_NOREV}-YYYYMMDD`.

`DIST_SUBDIR` is also used when a distfile's name does not contain a version and the distfile is apt to change. In cases where the likelihood of this is very small, `DIST_SUBDIR` might not be required. Additionally, `DIST_SUBDIR` must not be removed unless the distfile name changes, even if a package is being moved or renamed.

Do not forget regenerating the `distinfo` file after that, since it contains the `DIST_SUBDIR` path in the filenames. Also, increase the `PKGREVISION` if the installed package is different. Furthermore, a mail to the package's authors seems appropriate telling them that changing distfiles after releases without changing the file names is not good practice.

### 21.2.3. Packages hosted on github.com

Helper methods exist for packages hosted on `github.com` which will often have distfile names that clash with other packages, for example `1.0.tar.gz`. Use one of the three recipes from below:

**21.2.3.1. Fetch based on a tagged release**

If your distfile URL looks similar to

`https://github.com/username/example/archive/v1.0.zip`, then you are packaging a tagged release.

```
DISTNAME=          example-1.0
MASTER_SITES=     ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
#GITHUB_PROJECT=  example    # can be omitted if same as DISTNAME
GITHUB_TAG=       v${PKGVERSION_NOREV}
EXTRACT_SUFX=     .zip
```

Here, `DISTNAME` combined with use of `GITHUB_TAG` leads the file fetching infrastructure to save the resulting file locally as `example-1.0.zip`.

**21.2.3.2. Fetch based on a specific commit before the first release**

If your distfile looks similar to

`https://github.com/username/example/archive/988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11` and is from a commit before the first release, then set the package version to `0.0.0.N`, where `N` is the number of commits to the repository, and set `GITHUB_TAG` to the commit hash. This will (almost) ensure that the first tagged release will have a version greater than this one so that package upgrades will function properly.

```
DISTNAME=          example-0.0.0.347
MASTER_SITES=     ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
#GITHUB_PROJECT=  example    # can be omitted if same as DISTNAME
GITHUB_TAG=       988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11
```

**21.2.3.3. Fetch based on a specific commit after a release**

If your distfile looks similar to

`https://github.com/username/example/archive/988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11` and is from a commit after a release, then include the last release version and the commit count since that release in the package version and set `GITHUB_TAG` to the commit hash. The latest release and commit count are shown in the output of `"git describe --tags"`:

```
# git clone https://github.com/username/example
# cd example
# git describe --tags
1.2.3-5-g988881a
```

```
DISTNAME=          example-1.2.3.5
MASTER_SITES=     ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
#GITHUB_PROJECT=  example    # can be omitted if same as DISTNAME
GITHUB_TAG=       988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11
```

#### 21.2.3.4. Fetch based on release

If your distfile URL looks similar to

`https://github.com/username/example/releases/download/rel-1.6/offensive-1.6.zip`,  
then you are packaging a release.

```
DISTNAME=      offensive-1.6
PKGNAME=      ${DISTNAME:S/offensive/proper/}
MASTER_SITES= ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
GITHUB_PROJECT= example
GITHUB_RELEASE= rel-${PKGVERSION_NOREV} # usually just set this to ${DISTNAME}
EXTRACT_SUFX= .zip
```

## 21.3. The *configure* phase

### 21.3.1. Shared libraries - libtool

pkgsrc supports many different machines, with different object formats like a.out and ELF, and varying abilities to do shared library and dynamic loading at all. To accompany this, varying commands and options have to be passed to the compiler, linker, etc. to get the Right Thing, which can be pretty annoying especially if you don't have all the machines at your hand to test things. The `devel/libtool` pkg can help here, as it just “knows” how to build both static and dynamic libraries from a set of source files, thus being platform-independent.

Here's how to use libtool in a package in seven simple steps:

1. Add `USE_LIBTOOL=yes` to the package Makefile.
2. For library objects, use “`${LIBTOOL} --mode=compile ${CC}`” in place of “`${CC}`”. You could even add it to the definition of `CC`, if only libraries are being built in a given Makefile. This one command will build both PIC and non-PIC library objects, so you need not have separate shared and non-shared library rules.
3. For the linking of the library, remove any “`ar`”, “`ranlib`”, and “`ld -Bshareable`” commands, and instead use:

```
${LIBTOOL} --mode=link \
    ${CC} -o ${.TARGET:.a=.la} \
        ${OBJS:.o=.lo} \
        -rpath ${PREFIX}/lib \
        -version-info major:minor
```

Note that the library is changed to have a `.la` extension, and the objects are changed to have a `.lo` extension. Change `OBJS` as necessary. This automatically creates all of the `.a`, `.so.major.minor`, and ELF symlinks (if necessary) in the build directory. Be sure to include “`-version-info`”, especially when major and minor are zero, as libtool will otherwise strip off the shared library version.

From the libtool manual:

So, libtool library versions are described by three integers:

**CURRENT**

The most recent interface number that this library implements.

**REVISION**

The implementation number of the CURRENT interface.

**AGE**

The difference between the newest and oldest interfaces that this library implements. In other words, the library implements all the interface numbers in the range from number 'CURRENT - AGE' to 'CURRENT'.

If two libraries have identical CURRENT and AGE numbers, then the dynamic linker chooses the library with the greater REVISION number.

The “-release” option will produce different results for a.out and ELF (excluding symlinks) in only one case. An ELF library of the form “libfoo-release.so.x.y” will have a symlink of “libfoo.so.x.y” on an a.out platform. This is handled automatically.

The “-rpath argument” is the install directory of the library being built.

In the PLIST, include only the .la file, the other files will be added automatically.

4. When linking shared object (.so) files, i.e. files that are loaded via dlopen(3), NOT shared libraries, use “-module -avoid-version” to prevent them getting version tacked on.

The PLIST file gets the foo.so entry.

5. When linking programs that depend on these libraries *before* they are installed, preface the cc(1) or ld(1) line with “\${LIBTOOL} --mode=link”, and it will find the correct libraries (static or shared), but please be aware that libtool will not allow you to specify a relative path in -L (such as “-L./somalib”), because it expects you to change that argument to be the .la file. e.g.

```
${LIBTOOL} --mode=link ${CC} -o someprog -L./somalib -lsomalib
```

should be changed to:

```
${LIBTOOL} --mode=link ${CC} -o someprog ../somalib/somalib.la
```

and it will do the right thing with the libraries.

6. When installing libraries, preface the install(1) or cp(1) command with “\${LIBTOOL} --mode=install”, and change the library name to .la. e.g.

```
${LIBTOOL} --mode=install ${BSD_INSTALL_LIB} ${SOMELIB:.a=.la} ${PREFIX}/lib
```

This will install the static .a, shared library, any needed symlinks, and run ldconfig(8).

7. In your PLIST, include only the .la file (this is a change from previous behaviour).

### 21.3.2. Using libtool on GNU packages that already support libtool

Add `USE_LIBTOOL=yes` to the package Makefile. This will override the package’s own libtool in most cases. For older libtool using packages, libtool is made by ltconfig script during the do-configure step; you can check the libtool script location by doing **make configure; find work\*/ -name libtool**.

`LIBTOOL_OVERRIDE` specifies which libtool scripts, relative to `WRKSR`, to override. By default, it is set to “`libtool */libtool */*/libtool`”. If this does not match the location of the package’s libtool script(s), set it as appropriate.

If you do not need `*.a` static libraries built and installed, then use `SHLIBTOOL_OVERRIDE` instead.

If your package makes use of the platform-independent library for loading dynamic shared objects, that comes with libtool (libltdl), you should include `devel/libltdl/buildlink3.mk`.

Some packages use libtool incorrectly so that the package may not work or build in some circumstances. Some of the more common errors are:

- The inclusion of a shared object (`-module`) as a dependent library in an executable or library. This in itself isn’t a problem if one of two things has been done:
  1. The shared object is named correctly, i.e. `libfoo.la`, not `foo.la`
  2. The `-dlopen` option is used when linking an executable.
- The use of libltdl without the correct calls to initialisation routines. The function `lt_dlinit()` should be called and the macro `LTDL_SET_PRELOADED_SYMBOLS` included in executables.

### 21.3.3. GNU Autoconf/Automake

If a package needs GNU autoconf or automake to be executed to regenerate the `configure` script and `Makefile.in` makefile templates from `configure.ac` and `Makefile.am`, then they should be executed in a pre-configure target:

```
USE_TOOLS+= autoconf automake autoreconf
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
...

pre-configure:
    set -e; cd ${WRKSR} && autoreconf -fi
...
```

Packages which use GNU Automake will sometimes require GNU Make (`gmake` in `USE_TOOLS`), but not always. Note that `autoreconf` only needs to be executed if `configure.ac` or `Makefiles` are modified, or `configure` is not present.

There are times when the `configure` process makes additional changes to the generated files, which then causes the build process to try to re-execute the automake sequence. This is prevented by touching various files in the `configure` stage. If this causes problems with your package you can set `AUTOMAKE_OVERRIDE=NO` in the package `Makefile`.

### 21.3.4. Meson / ninja

Packages using Meson to configure need to include:

```
.include "../devel/meson/build.mk"
```

In nearly all cases (any program with dependencies), `pkg-config` needs to be added to `USE_TOOLS`. If the package installs translation files for non-English languages, also add `msgfmt` and `xgettext`:

```
USE_TOOLS+= pkg-config msgfmt xgettext
```

If any options need to be passed to Meson, use `MESON_ARGS` instead of `CONFIGURE_ARGS`:

```
MESON_ARGS+= -Dx11=false
```

### 21.3.5. Determining the endianness

To determine the endianness of the target platform, have a look at `mk/endian.mk`.

## 21.4. Programming languages

### 21.4.1. C, C++, and Fortran

Compilers for the C and C++ languages come with the NetBSD base system. By default, `pkgsrc` assumes that a package is written in C and will hide all other compilers (via the wrapper framework, see Chapter 18).

To declare which languages should be made available through `pkgsrc`'s compiler wrappers, use the `USE_LANGUAGES` variable. Allowed values currently are:

```
c, c++, fortran, fortran77, java, objc, obj-c++, and ada.
```

(and any combination). The default is “c”. Packages using GNU configure scripts, even if written in C++, usually need a C compiler for the configure phase.

To declare which features a package requires from the compiler, set either `USE_CC_FEATURES` or `USE_CXX_FEATURES`. Allowed values for `USE_CC_FEATURES` are currently:

```
c11, c99, has_include
```

Allowed values for `USE_CXX_FEATURES` are currently:

```
c++11, c++14, c++17, c++20, has_include, regex, filesystem,
charconv, parallelism_ts, unique_ptr, put_time,
is_trivially_copy_constructible
```

Note at present these variables only affect use of GCC, not other compilers.

Language variants like `gnu99` and `c++11` can be specified in `FORCE_C_STD` and `FORCE_CXX_STD` if the package does not explicitly set `-std=...` when compiling (i.e. the package assumes the compiler defaults to C++11 or some other standard). This is a common bug in upstream build systems.

Allowed values for `FORCE_C_STD` are currently:

```
c90, c99, c11, gnu90, gnu99, gnu11
```

Allowed values for `FORCE_CXX_STD` are currently:

```
c++03, c++11, c++14, c++17, c++20,
gnu++03, gnu++11, gnu++14, gnu++17, gnu++20
```

Note at present these variables only affect use of GCC and Clang.

### 21.4.2. Java

If a program is written in Java, use the Java framework in `pkgsrc`. The package must include `../../mk/java-vm.mk`. This Makefile fragment provides the following variables:

- `USE_JAVA` defines if a build dependency on the JDK is added. If `USE_JAVA` is set to “run”, then there is only a runtime dependency on the JDK. The default is “yes”, which also adds a build dependency on the JDK.
- Set `USE_JAVA2` to declare that a package needs a Java2 implementation. The supported values are “yes”, “1.4”, and “1.5”. “yes” accepts any Java2 implementation, “1.4” insists on versions 1.4 or above, and “1.5” only accepts versions 1.5 or above. This variable is not set by default.
- `PKG_JAVA_HOME` is automatically set to the runtime location of the used Java implementation dependency. It may be used to set `JAVA_HOME` to a good value if the program needs this variable to be defined.

### 21.4.3. Go

If a program is written in Go and has any dependencies on other Go modules, have the package include `../../lang/go/go-module.mk`.

1. Generate a list of those dependencies with **make clean && make patch && make show-go-modules > go-modules.mk**.
2. Prepend `.include "go-modules.mk"` to any other `.includes`.
3. Incorporate these modules in `distinfo` with **make makesum**.

### 21.4.4. Rust

If a program is written in Rust and uses Cargo to build, have the package include `../../lang/rust/cargo.mk`.

1. Generate a list of those dependencies with **make CARGO\_ARGS="build --release" build && make print-cargo-depends > cargo-depends.mk**.
2. Prepend `.include "cargo-depends.mk"` to any other `.includes`.
3. Incorporate these modules in `distinfo` with **make makesum**.

### 21.4.5. Packages containing Perl scripts

If your package contains interpreted Perl scripts, add “perl” to the `USE_TOOLS` variable and set `REPLACE_PERL` to ensure that the proper interpreter path is set. `REPLACE_PERL` should contain a list of scripts, relative to `WRKSRCDIR`, that you want adjusted. Every occurrence of `*/bin/perl` in a she-bang line will be replaced with the full path to the Perl executable.

If a particular version of Perl is needed, set the `PERL5_REQD` variable to the version number. The default is “5.0”.

See Section 21.6.6 for information about handling Perl modules.

There is also the `REPLACE_PERL6` variable for the language now known as Raku.

### 21.4.6. Packages containing shell scripts

`REPLACE_SH`, `REPLACE_BASH`, `REPLACE_CSH`, and `REPLACE_KSH` can be used to replace shell she-bangs in files. Please use the appropriate one, preferring `REPLACE_SH` when this shell is sufficient. Each should contain a list of scripts, relative to `WRKSRCDIR`, that you want adjusted. Every occurrence of the matching shell in a she-bang line will be replaced with the full path to the shell executable. When using `REPLACE_BASH`, don’t forget to add `bash` to `USE_TOOLS`.

### 21.4.7. Other programming languages

There are further similar `REPLACE` variables available, e.g., `REPLACE_AWK` for packages containing awk scripts, and `REPLACE_R` for R. These two, like the others noted above, have their actions defined centrally in `mk/configure/replace-interpreter.mk`. Other languages define the actions of these variables within their own dedicated part of the tree, e.g., `REPLACE_PHP` is actioned in `lang/php/replace.mk`, and `REPLACE_PYTHON` is actioned in `lang/python/application.mk`. For other languages, consult the `mk` files found within their specific directories (the naming convention varies), or check the list found in Appendix E.

Currently, special handling for other languages varies in `pkgsrc`. If a compiler package provides a `buildlink3.mk` file, include that, otherwise just add a (build) dependency on the appropriate compiler package.

## 21.5. The *build* phase

The most common failures when building a package are that some platforms do not provide certain header files, functions or libraries, or they provide the functions in a library that the original package author didn’t know. To work around this, you can rewrite the source code in most cases so that it does not use the missing functions or provides a replacement function.

### 21.5.1. Compiling C and C++ code conditionally

If a package already comes with a GNU configure script, the preferred way to fix the build failure is to change the configure script, not the code. In the other cases, you can utilize the C preprocessor, which defines certain macros depending on the operating system and hardware architecture it compiles for.

These macros can be queried using for example `#if defined(__i386)`. Almost every operating system, hardware architecture and compiler has its own macro. For example, if the macros `__GNUC__`, `__i386__` and `__NetBSD__` are all defined, you know that you are using NetBSD on an i386 compatible CPU, and your compiler is GCC.

The list of the following macros for hardware and operating system depends on the compiler that is used. For example, if you want to conditionally compile code on Solaris, don't use `__sun__`, as the SunPro compiler does not define it. Use `__sun` instead.

### 21.5.1.1. C preprocessor macros to identify the operating system

To distinguish between specific NetBSD versions, you should use the following code.

```
#ifndef __NetBSD__
#include <sys/param.h>
#if __NetBSD_Prereq__(9,99,17)
/* use a newer feature */
#else
/* older code */
#endif
#endif

#ifdef _WIN32
/* Unix-like specific code */
#endif
```

To distinguish between 4.4 BSD-derived systems and the rest of the world, you should use the following code.

```
#include <sys/param.h>
#if (defined(BSD) && BSD >= 199306)
/* BSD-specific code goes here */
#else
/* non-BSD-specific code goes here */
#endif
```

You can also test for the following macros:

```
Cygwin      __CYGWIN__
DragonFly   __DragonFly__
FreeBSD     __FreeBSD__
Haiku       __HAIKU__
IRIX        __sgi (TODO: get a definite source for this)
Linux       __linux
Mac OS X    __APPLE__
Minix3      __minix
NetBSD      __NetBSD__
OpenBSD     __OpenBSD__
Solaris     sun, __sun
```

**21.5.1.2. C preprocessor macros to identify the hardware architecture**

```

i386          i386, __i386, __i386__
x86-64       __amd64__, __x86_64__
ARM          __arm__
MIPS         __mips
SPARC        sparc, __sparc
PowerPC      __powerpc

```

**21.5.1.3. C preprocessor macros to identify the compiler**

```

GCC          __GNUC__ (major version), __GNUC_MINOR__
MIPSpro      _COMPILER_VERSION (0x741 for MIPSpro 7.41)
SunPro       __SUNPRO_C (0x570 for Sun C 5.7)
SunPro C++   __SUNPRO_CC (0x580 for Sun C++ 5.8)

```

**21.5.2. How to handle compiler bugs**

Some source files trigger bugs in the compiler, based on combinations of compiler version and architecture and almost always relation to optimisation being enabled. Common symptoms are gcc internal errors or never finishing compiling a file.

Typically, a workaround involves testing the `MACHINE_ARCH` and compiler version, disabling optimisation for that combination of file, `MACHINE_ARCH` and compiler.

This used to be a big problem in the past, but is rarely needed now as compiler technology has matured. If you still need to add a compiler specific workaround, please do so in the file `hacks.mk` and describe the symptom and compiler version as detailed as possible.

**21.5.3. No such file or directory**

Compilation sometimes fails with an error message like this:

```

.../x11/gtk3/work/gtk+-3.24.12/gdk/gdktypes.h:35:10:
    fatal error: pango/pango.h: No such file or directory

```

The proper way to fix this problem depends on the type of the header, which is described in the following sections.

**21.5.3.1. Headers from other packages**

If the header name looks like it comes from a different package, that other package should be included via the `builink3` framework.

First, look whether the header is somewhere in the `builink3` directory below `WRKDIR`. In the above case of the missing Pango header:

```

$ find work/.builink/ -print | grep -F pango/pango.h

```

In the case of Pango, the output is:

```
work/.buildlink/include/pango-1.0/pango/pango.h
```

If the `pango/pango.h` file were placed directly in the `.buildlink` directory, it would have been found automatically. There is an extra `pango-1.0` path component though, which means that the compiler command line must contain an option of the form

`-I${BUILDLINK3_PREFIX.pango}/include/pango-1.0`. In most cases this option is generated by the configure script, which can be examined using:

```
$ $ grep -o '[-]I[^[[:space:]]*/pango[^[[:space:]]]*' work/*/Makefile
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
```

This looks good. These options are transformed by the buildlink wrapper to refer to the correct path inside `work/.buildlink`.

Since the compilation fails though, examine the compiler command lines in `work/.work.log` to see whether the `-I` option is included in the particular command line.

To further analyze the situation, run **`make build-env`**, which sets up an interactive, realistic environment including all the `pkgsrc` wrapper commands and environment variables. From there, try to compile some simple example programs that use the header.

### 21.5.3.2. Headers generated during the build

If the name of the header seems to come from the package itself, and if the build is run with parallel jobs, the package may have some undeclared dependencies between the `.c` and the `.h` files, and a C file is compiled before its required header is generated.

To see whether the build runs with parallel jobs, run **`make show-all-build | grep JOBS`**. Its output looks like this:

```
usr  MAKE_JOBS=          7
pkg  MAKE_JOBS_SAFE      # undefined
def  _MAKE_JOBS_N=       7
```

In this case the `pkgsrc` user has asked `pkgsrc` to build packages with 7 jobs in parallel (`MAKE_JOBS`). The package could have disabled parallel builds by setting `MAKE_JOBS_SAFE` to `no`, but in this case it hasn't.

To see whether the build failure is caused by parallel builds, first save the exact error message and a bit of context, maybe you need it later for reporting a bug. Next, run:

```
MAKE_JOBS_SAFE=no make clean build
```

If that succeeds, file a bug report (<https://www.NetBSD.org/cgi-bin/sendpr.cgi?gndb=netbsd>) against the `pkgsrc` package, including the exact error message and the contents of your `mk.conf` file.

### 21.5.3.3. Symlinks

Pkgsrc does not work reliably if any of `LOCALBASE`, `VARBASE` or `WRKDIR` contains a symlink. Since 2019Q2, the pkgsrc bootstrap program prevents installing pkgsrc in symlink-based directories. Existing pkgsrc installations are not checked for symlinks though.

The "No such file or directory" error messages are a typical symptom of symlinks, and it's quite difficult to find out that this is the actual cause.

### 21.5.3.4. Stale working directories

When building a hierarchy of packages, it may happen that one package is built and then pkgsrc is updated. This situation can provoke various hard to diagnose build errors. To clean up the situation:

```
$ (cd ../../ && cat mk/bsd.pkg.mk >/dev/null && rm -rf */*/work)
```

(The only purpose of the `bsd.pkg.mk` is to prevent running this command in the wrong directory.)

If you have set `WRKOBJDIR` in `mk.conf`, remove that directory as well.

### 21.5.3.5. Other possible reasons

On platforms other than BSD, third-party packages are installed in `/usr/include`, together with the base system. This means that pkgsrc cannot distinguish between headers provided by the base system (which it needs) and headers from third-party packages (which are often included in pkgsrc as well). This can lead to subtle version mismatches.

In pkgsrc installations that have been active for several years, it may happen that some files are manually deleted. To exclude this unlikely reason, run **pkg\_admin check**.

It may help to run **pkg\_admin rebuild-tree** to check/fix dependencies.

If all of the above doesn't help, see Chapter 2 for contact information. Be prepared to describe what you have tried so far and what any error messages were.

## 21.5.4. Undefined reference to "..."

This error message often means that a package did not link to a shared library it needs. The following functions are known to cause this error message over and over.

Function	Library	Affected platforms
accept, bind, connect	-lsocket	Solaris
crypt	-lcrypt	DragonFly, NetBSD
dlopen, dlsym	-ldl	Linux
gethost*	-lnsl	Solaris
inet_aton	-lresolv	Solaris
nanosleep, sem_*, timer_*	-lrt	Solaris
openpty	-lutil	Linux

To fix these linker errors, it is often sufficient to add `LIBS.OperatingSystem+= -lfoo` to the package `Makefile` and then run **`bmake clean; bmake`**.

#### 21.5.4.1. The SunPro compiler and inline functions

When you are using the SunPro compiler, there is another possibility. That compiler cannot handle the following code:

```
extern int extern_func(int);

static inline int
inline_func(int x)
{
    return extern_func(x);
}

int main(void)
{
    return 0;
}
```

It generates the code for `inline_func` even if that function is never used. This code then refers to `extern_func`, which can usually not be resolved. To solve this problem you can try to tell the package to disable inlining of functions.

#### 21.5.4.2. Missing atomic functions

When building for older machine architectures (e.g., i386, PowerPC), builds may fail because the package expects modern 64-bit atomic functions which the underlying hardware either doesn't support, or will only support with specific compiler flags. This is generally handled via inclusion of `mk/atomic64.mk`.

### 21.5.5. Running out of memory

Sometimes packages fail to build because the compiler runs into an operating system specific soft limit. With the `UNLIMIT_RESOURCES` variable `pkgsrc` can be told to unlimit the resources. The allowed values are any combination of “`cputime`”, “`datasize`”, “`memorysize`”, “`stacksize`” and “`virtualsize`”. Setting this variable is similar to running the shell builtin **`ulimit`** command to raise the maximum data segment size or maximum stack size of a process, respectively, to their hard limits.

## 21.6. The *install* phase

### 21.6.1. Creating needed directories

The BSD-compatible **`install`** supplied with some operating systems cannot create more than one directory at a time. As such, you should call `${INSTALL_*_DIR}` like this:

```

${INSTALL_DATA_DIR} ${PREFIX}/dir1
${INSTALL_DATA_DIR} ${PREFIX}/dir2

```

Instead of running the **install** commands directly, you can also append “dir1 dir2” to the `INSTALLATION_DIRS` variable, which will automatically do the right thing.

## 21.6.2. Where to install documentation

In general, documentation should be installed into `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGBASE}` or `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGNAME}_NOREV` (the latter includes the version number of the package).

Many modern packages using GNU autoconf allow to set the directory where HTML documentation is installed with the “--with-html-dir” option. Sometimes using this flag is needed because otherwise the documentation ends up in `${PREFIX}/share/doc/html` or other places. In `pkgsrc`, the HTML documentation should go into the package-specific directory, just like any other documentation.

An exception to the above is that library API documentation generated with the `textproc/gtk-doc` tools, for use by special browsers (`devhelp`) should be left at their default location, which is `${PREFIX}/share/gtk-doc`. Such documentation can be recognized from files ending in `.devhelp` or `.devhelp2`. (It is also acceptable to install such files in `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGBASE}` or `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGNAME}`); the `.devhelp*` file must be directly in that directory then, no additional subdirectory level is allowed in this case. This is usually achieved by using “--with-html-dir=\${PREFIX}/share/doc”. `${PREFIX}/share/gtk-doc` is preferred though.)

## 21.6.3. Installing highscore files

Certain packages, most of them in the games category, install a score file that allows all users on the system to record their highscores. In order for this to work, the binaries need to be installed `setgid` and the score files owned by the appropriate group and/or owner (traditionally the “games” user/group). Set `USE_GAMESGROUP` to `yes` to support this. The following variables, documented in more detail in `mk/defaults/mk.conf`, control this behaviour: `GAMEDATAMODE`, `GAMEDIRMODE`, `GAMES_GROUP`, `GAMEMODE`, `GAME_USER`. Other useful variables are: `GAMEDIR_PERMS`, `GAMEDATA_PERMS` and `SETGID_GAMES_PERMS`.

An example that illustrates some of the variables described above is `games/moon-buggy`. `OWN_DIRS_PERMS` is used to properly set directory permissions of the directory where the scorefile is saved, `REQD_FILES_PERMS` is used to create a dummy scorefile (`mbscore`) with the proper permissions and `SPECIAL_PERMS` is used to install `setgid` the game binary:

```

USE_GAMESGROUP=          yes

BUILD_DEFS+=            VARBASE

OWN_DIRS_PERMS+=        ${VARBASE}/games/moon-buggy ${GAMEDIR_PERMS}
REQD_FILES_PERMS+=      /dev/null ${VARBASE}/games/moon-buggy/mbscore ${GAMEDATA_PERMS}
SPECIAL_PERMS+=         ${PREFIX}/bin/moon-buggy ${SETGID_GAMES_PERMS}

```

Various `INSTALL_*` variables are also available: `INSTALL_GAME` to install `setgid` game binaries, `INSTALL_GAME_DIR` to install game directories that are needed to be accessed by `setgid` games and `INSTALL_GAME_DATA` to install scorefiles.

A package should therefore never hard code file ownership or access permissions but rely on `*_PERMS` as described above or alternatively on `INSTALL_GAME`, `INSTALL_GAME_DATA` and `INSTALL_GAME_DIR` to set these correctly.

#### 21.6.4. Adding DESTDIR support to packages

`DESTDIR` support means that a package installs into a staging directory, not the final location of the files. Then a binary package is created which can be used for installation as usual. There are two ways: Either the package must install as root (“`destdir`”) or the package can install as non-root user (“`user-destdir`”).

- `PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT` has to be set to “`destdir`” or “`user-destdir`”. By default `PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT` is set to “`user-destdir`” to help catching more potential packaging problems. If `bsd.prefs.mk` is included in the Makefile, `PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT` needs to be set before the inclusion.
- All installation operations have to be prefixed with `${DESTDIR}`.
- automake gets this `DESTDIR` mostly right automatically. Many manual rules and pre/post-install often are incorrect; fix them.
- If files are installed with special owner/group use `SPECIAL_PERMS`.
- In general, packages should support `UNPRIVILEGED` to be able to use `DESTDIR`.

#### 21.6.5. Packages with hardcoded paths to other interpreters

Your package may also contain scripts with hardcoded paths to other interpreters besides (or as well as) Perl. To correct the full pathname to the script interpreter, you need to set the following definitions in your Makefile (we shall use `tclsh` in this example):

```
REPLACE_INTERPRETER+=    tcl
REPLACE.tcl.old=         ./bin/tclsh
REPLACE.tcl.new=         ${PREFIX}/bin/tclsh
REPLACE_FILES.tcl=      # list of tcl scripts which need to be fixed,
# relative to ${WRKSRCS}, just as in REPLACE_PERL
```

#### 21.6.6. Packages installing Perl modules

Makefiles of packages providing perl5 modules should include the Makefile fragment `../../lang/perl5/module.mk`. It provides a **do-configure** target for the standard perl configuration for such modules as well as various hooks to tune this configuration. See comments in this file for details.

Perl5 modules will install into different places depending on the version of perl used during the build process. To address this, `pkgsrc` will append lines to the `PLIST` corresponding to the files listed in the installed `.packlist` file generated by most perl5 modules. This is invoked by defining `PERL5_PACKLIST` to a space-separated list of packlist files relative to `PERL5_PACKLIST_DIR` (`PERL5_INSTALLVENDORARCH` by default), e.g.:

```
PERL5_PACKLIST= auto/Pg/.packlist
```

The perl5 config variables `installarchlib`, `installscript`, `installvendorbin`, `installvendorscript`, `installvendorarch`, `installvendorlib`, `installvendormanldir`, and `installvendorman3dir` represent those locations in which components of perl5 modules may be installed, provided as variable with uppercase and prefixed with `PERL5_`, e.g. `PERL5_INSTALLARCHLIB` and may be used by perl5 packages that don't have a packlist. These variables are also substituted for in the `PLIST` as uppercase prefixed with `PERL5_SUB_`.

### 21.6.7. Packages installing pkg-config files

Some packages, usually those providing libraries, install pkg-config files so that their headers and libraries can easily be found. The file names end with `.pc`.

Most of the time, these files only provide the linker flags for the library, but do not include the flags for setting the `rpath` so the libraries can also be found at runtime. Since this is so common, `pkgsrc` provides `PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDE` for this. Many packages generate the `.pc` from `.pc.in`, in that case add those files to the `PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDE` variable:

```
PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDE+= foo.pc.in
```

For packages using `meson`, the files are generated during build and you also need to change the phase in which the replacement is done. For example:

```
PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDE+=          output/meson-private/foo.pc
PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDE_STAGE=     post-build
```

### 21.6.8. Packages installing info files

Some packages install info files or use the “makeinfo” or “install-info” commands. `INFO_FILES` should be defined in the package Makefile so that `INSTALL` and `DEINSTALL` scripts will be generated to handle registration of the info files in the Info directory file. The “install-info” command used for the info files registration is either provided by the system, or by a special purpose package automatically added as dependency if needed.

`PKGINFODIR` is the directory under `${PREFIX}` where info files are primarily located. `PKGINFODIR` defaults to “info” and can be overridden by the user.

The info files for the package should be listed in the package `PLIST`; however any split info files need not be listed.

A package which needs the “makeinfo” command at build time must add “makeinfo” to `USE_TOOLS` in its Makefile. If a minimum version of the “makeinfo” command is needed it should be noted with the `TEXINFO_REQD` variable in the package Makefile. By default, a minimum version of 3.12 is required. If the system does not provide a **makeinfo** command or if it does not match the required minimum, a build dependency on the `devel/gtexinfo` package will be added automatically.

The build and installation process of the software provided by the package should not use the **install-info** command as the registration of info files is the task of the package `INSTALL` script, and it must use the appropriate **makeinfo** command.

To achieve this goal, the `pkgsrc` infrastructure creates overriding scripts for the **install-info** and **makeinfo** commands in a directory listed early in `PATH`.

The script overriding **install-info** has no effect except the logging of a message. The script overriding **makeinfo** logs a message and according to the value of `TEXINFO_REQD` either runs the appropriate **makeinfo** command or exit on error.

### 21.6.9. Packages installing man pages

All packages that install manual pages should install them into the same directory, so that there is one common place to look for them. In `pkgsrc`, this place is `${PREFIX}/${PKGMANDIR}`, and this expression should be used in packages. The default for `PKGMANDIR` is “man”. Another often-used value is “share/man”.

**Note:** The support for a custom `PKGMANDIR` is far from complete.

The `PLIST` files can just use `man/` as the top level directory for the man page file entries, and the `pkgsrc` framework will convert as needed. In all other places, the correct `PKGMANDIR` must be used.

Packages that are configured with `GNU_CONFIGURE` set as “yes”, by default will use the `./configure --mandir` switch to set where the man pages should be installed. The path is `GNU_CONFIGURE_MANDIR` which defaults to `${PREFIX}/${PKGMANDIR}`.

Packages that use `GNU_CONFIGURE` but do not use `--mandir`, can set `CONFIGURE_HAS_MANDIR` to “no”. Or if the `./configure` script uses a non-standard use of `--mandir`, you can set `GNU_CONFIGURE_MANDIR` as needed.

See Section 19.5 for information on installation of compressed manual pages.

### 21.6.10. Packages installing X11 fonts

If a package installs font files, you will need to rebuild the fonts database in the directory where they get installed at installation and deinstallation time. This can be automatically done by using the `pkginstall` framework.

You can list the directories where fonts are installed in the `FONTSDIRS.type` variables, where `type` can be one of “ttf”, “type1” or “x11”. Also make sure that the database file `fonts.dir` is not listed in the `PLIST`.

Note that you should not create new directories for fonts; instead use the standard ones to avoid that the user needs to manually configure his X server to find them.

### 21.6.11. Packages installing SGML or XML data

If a package installs SGML or XML data files that need to be registered in system-wide catalogs (like DTDs, sub-catalogs, etc.), you need to take some extra steps:

1. Include `../../../../textproc/xmlcatmgr/catalogs.mk` in your Makefile, which takes care of registering those files in system-wide catalogs at installation and deinstallation time.

2. Set `SGML_CATALOGS` to the full path of any SGML catalogs installed by the package.
3. Set `XML_CATALOGS` to the full path of any XML catalogs installed by the package.
4. Set `SGML_ENTRIES` to individual entries to be added to the SGML catalog. These come in groups of three strings; see `xmlcatmgr(1)` for more information (specifically, arguments recognized by the 'add' action). Note that you will normally not use this variable.
5. Set `XML_ENTRIES` to individual entries to be added to the XML catalog. These come in groups of three strings; see `xmlcatmgr(1)` for more information (specifically, arguments recognized by the 'add' action). Note that you will normally not use this variable.

### 21.6.12. Packages installing extensions to the MIME database

If a package provides extensions to the MIME database by installing `.xml` files inside `/${PREFIX}/share/mime/packages`, you need to take some extra steps to ensure that the database is kept consistent with respect to these new files:

1. Include `../databases/shared-mime-info/mimedb.mk` (avoid using the `buildlink3.mk` file from this same directory, which is reserved for inclusion from other `buildlink3.mk` files). It takes care of rebuilding the MIME database at installation and deinstallation time, and disallows any access to it directly from the package.
2. Check the `PLIST` and remove any entries under the `share/mime` directory, *except* for files saved under `share/mime/packages`. The former are handled automatically by the `update-mime-database` program, but the latter are package-dependent and must be removed by the package that installed them in the first place.
3. Remove any `share/mime/*` directories from the `PLIST`. They will be handled by the `shared-mime-info` package.

### 21.6.13. Packages using intltool

If a package uses `intltool` during its build, add `intltool` to the `USE_TOOLS`, which forces it to use the `intltool` package provided by `pkgsrc`, instead of the one bundled with the distribution file.

This tracks `intltool`'s build-time dependencies and uses the latest available version; this way, the package benefits of any bug fixes that may have appeared since it was released.

### 21.6.14. Packages installing startup scripts

If a package contains an `rc.d` script, it won't be copied into the startup directory (`/etc/rc.d`) by default, but you can enable copying by setting the option `PKG_RCD_SCRIPTS=YES` in `mk.conf`. With `PKG_RCD_SCRIPTS=YES`, `rc.d` scripts will be copied into `/etc/rc.d` when a package is installed, but only if the target does not already exist. Copies in `/etc/rc.d` will be automatically removed only if they have not been modified.

Note that this alone does not enable the service: It must still be added to `/etc/rc.conf`.

### 21.6.15. Packages installing TeX modules

If a package installs TeX packages into the texmf tree, the `ls-R` database of the tree needs to be updated.

**Note:** Except the main TeX packages such as `kpathsea`, packages should install files into `${PREFIX}/share/texmf-dist`, not `${PREFIX}/share/texmf`.

1. Include `../../print/kpathsea/texmf.mk`. This takes care of rebuilding the `ls-R` database at installation and deinstallation time.
2. If your package installs files into a texmf tree other than the one at `${PREFIX}/share/texmf-dist`, set `TEX_TEXMF_DIRS` to the list of all texmf trees that need database update.

If your package also installs font map files that need to be registered using **updmap**, include `../../print/tex-tetex/map.mk` and set `TEX_MAP_FILES` and/or `TEX_MIXEDMAP_FILES` to the list of all such font map files. Then **updmap** will be run automatically at installation/deinstallation to enable/disable font map files for TeX output drivers.

3. Make sure that none of `ls-R` databases are included in `PLIST`, as they will be removed only by the `kpathsea` package.

### 21.6.16. Packages supporting running binaries in emulation

There are some packages that provide libraries and executables for running binaries from a one operating system on a different one (if the latter supports it). One example is running Linux binaries on NetBSD.

The `pkgtools/rpm2pkg` helps in extracting and packaging Linux rpm packages.

The `CHECK_SHLIBS` can be set to no to avoid the **check-shlibs** target, which tests if all libraries for each installed executable can be found by the dynamic linker. Since the standard dynamic linker is run, this fails for emulation packages, because the libraries used by the emulation are not in the standard directories.

### 21.6.17. Packages installing hicolor icons

If a package installs images under the `share/icons/hicolor` and/or updates the `share/icons/hicolor/icon-theme.cache` database, you need to take some extra steps to make sure that the shared theme directory is handled appropriately and that the cache database is rebuilt:

1. Include `../../graphics/hicolor-icon-theme/buildlink3.mk`.
2. Check the `PLIST` and remove the entry that refers to the theme cache.
3. Ensure that the `PLIST` does not remove the shared icon directories from the `share/icons/hicolor` hierarchy because they will be handled automatically.

The best way to verify that the `PLIST` is correct with respect to the last two points is to regenerate it using **make print-PLIST**.

### 21.6.18. Packages installing desktop files

If a package installs `.desktop` files under `share/applications` and these include MIME information (MimeType key), you need to take extra steps to ensure that they are registered into the MIME database:

1. Include `../../sysutils/desktop-file-utils/desktopdb.mk`.
2. Check the PLIST and remove the entry that refers to the `share/applications/mimeinfo.cache` file. It will be handled automatically.

The best way to verify that the PLIST is correct with respect to the last point is to regenerate it using **make print-PLIST**.

## 21.7. Marking packages as having problems

In some cases one does not have the time to solve a problem immediately. In this case, one can plainly mark a package as broken. For this, one just sets the variable `BROKEN` to the reason why the package is broken (similar to the `PKG_FAIL_REASON` variable). A user trying to build the package will immediately be shown this message, and the build will not be even tried.

`BROKEN` packages are removed from `pkgsrc` in irregular intervals.

## Chapter 22.

# *GNOME packaging and porting*

---

Quoting GNOME's web site (<https://www.gnome.org/>):

The GNOME project provides two things: The GNOME desktop environment, an intuitive and attractive desktop for users, and the GNOME development platform, an extensive framework for building applications that integrate into the rest of the desktop.

pkgsrc provides a seamless way to automatically build and install a complete GNOME environment *under many different platforms*. We can say with confidence that pkgsrc is one of the most advanced build and packaging systems for GNOME due to its included technologies buildlink3, the wrappers and tools framework and automatic configuration file management. Lots of efforts are put into achieving a completely clean deinstallation of installed software components.

Given that pkgsrc is NetBSD (<https://www.NetBSD.org/>)'s official packaging system, the above also means that great efforts are put into making GNOME work under this operating system.

This chapter is aimed at pkgsrc developers and other people interested in helping our GNOME porting and packaging efforts. It provides instructions on how to manage the existing packages and some important information regarding their internals.

### 22.1. Meta packages

pkgsrc includes three GNOME-related meta packages:

- `meta-pkgs/gnome-base`: Provides the core GNOME desktop environment. It only includes the necessary bits to get it to boot correctly, although it may lack important functionality for daily operation. The idea behind this package is to let end users build their own configurations on top of this one, first installing this meta package to achieve a functional setup and then adding individual applications.
- `meta-pkgs/gnome`: Provides a complete installation of the GNOME platform and desktop as defined by the GNOME project; this is based on the components distributed in the `platform/x.y/x.y.z/sources` and `desktop/x.y/x.y.z/sources` directories of the official FTP server. Developer-only tools found in those directories are not installed unless required by some other component to work properly. Similarly, packages from the bindings set (`bindings/x.y/x.y.z/sources`) are not pulled in unless required as a dependency for an end-user component. This package "extends" `meta-pkgs/gnome-base`.
- `meta-pkgs/gnome-devel`: Installs all the tools required to build a GNOME component when fetched from the CVS repository. These are required to let the **autogen.sh** scripts work appropriately.

In all these packages, the `DEPENDS` lines are sorted in a way that eases updates: a package may depend on other packages listed before it but not on any listed after it. It is very important to keep this order to ease updates so... *do not change it to alphabetical sorting!*

## 22.2. Packaging a GNOME application

Almost all GNOME applications are written in C and use a common set of tools as their build system. Things get different with the new bindings to other languages (such as Python), but the following will give you a general idea on the minimum required tools:

- Almost all GNOME applications use the GNU Autotools as their build system. As a general rule you will need to tell this to your package:

```
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
USE_LIBTOOL=   yes
USE_TOOLS+=    gmake
```

- If the package uses `pkg-config` to detect dependencies, add this tool to the list of required utilities:

```
USE_TOOLS+=    pkg-config
```

Also use `pkgtools/verifypc` at the end of the build process to ensure that you did not miss to specify any dependency in your package and that the version requirements are all correct.

- If the package uses `intltool`, be sure to add `intltool` to the `USE_TOOLS` to handle dependencies and to force the package to use the latest available version.
- If the package uses `gtk-doc` (a documentation generation utility), do *not* add a dependency on it. The tool is rather big and the distfile should come with pregenerated documentation anyway; if it does not, it is a bug that you ought to report. For such packages you should disable `gtk-doc` (unless it is the default):

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=    --disable-gtk-doc
```

The default location of installed HTML files (`share/gtk-doc/<package-name>`) is correct and should not be changed unless the package insists on installing them somewhere else. Otherwise programs as **devhelp** will not be able to open them. You can do that with an entry similar to:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=    --with-html-dir=${PREFIX}/share/gtk-doc/...
```

GNOME uses multiple *shared* directories and files under the installation prefix to maintain databases. In this context, shared means that those exact same directories and files are used among several different packages, leading to conflicts in the `PLIST`. `pkgsrc` currently includes functionality to handle the most common cases, so you have to forget about using `@unexec ${RMDIR}` lines in your file lists and omitting shared files from them. If you find yourself doing those, *your package is most likely incorrect*.

The following table lists the common situations that result in using shared directories or files. For each of them, the appropriate solution is given. After applying the solution be sure to *regenerate the package's file list* with **make print-PLIST** and ensure it is correct.

**Table 22-1. PLIST handling for GNOME packages**

If the package...	Then...
Installs icons under the <code>share/icons/hicolor</code> hierarchy or updates <code>share/icons/hicolor/icon-theme.cache</code> .	See Section 21.6.17.
Installs files under <code>share/mime/packages</code> .	See Section 21.6.12.

If the package...	Then...
Installs <code>.desktop</code> files under <code>share/applications</code> and these include MIME information.	See Section 21.6.18.

## 22.3. Updating GNOME to a newer version

When seeing GNOME as a whole, there are two kinds of updates:

### Major update

Given that there is still a very long way for GNOME 3 (if it ever appears), we consider a major update one that goes from a `2.X` version to a `2.Y` one, where `Y` is even and greater than `X`. These are hard to achieve because they introduce lots of changes in the components' code and almost all GNOME distfiles are updated to newer versions. Some of them can even break API and ABI compatibility with the previous major version series. As a result, the update needs to be done all at once to minimize breakage.

A major update typically consists of around 80 package updates and the addition of some new ones.

### Minor update

We consider a minor update one that goes from a `2.A.X` version to a `2.A.Y` one where `Y` is greater than `X`. These are easy to achieve because they do not update all GNOME components, can be done in an incremental way and do not break API nor ABI compatibility.

A minor update typically consists of around 50 package updates, although the numbers here may vary a lot.

In order to update the GNOME components in `pkgsrc` to a new stable release (either major or minor), the following steps should be followed:

1. Get a list of all the tarballs that form the new release by using the following commands. These will leave the full list of the components' distfiles into the `list.txt` file:

```
% echo ls "*.tar.bz2" | \
  ftp -V ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/platform/x.y/x.y.z/sources/ | \
  awk '{ print $9 }' >list.txt
% echo ls "*.tar.bz2" | \
  ftp -V ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/desktop/x.y/x.y.z/sources/ | \
  awk '{ print $9 }' >>list.txt
```

2. Open each meta package's `Makefile` and bump their version to the release you are updating them to. The three meta packages should be always consistent with versioning. Obviously remove any `PKGREVISIONS` that might be in them.
3. For each meta package, update all its `DEPENDS` lines to match the latest versions as shown by the above commands. Do *not* list any newer version (even if found in the FTP) because the meta packages are supposed to list the exact versions that form a specific GNOME release. Exceptions are permitted here if a newer version solves a serious issue in the overall desktop experience; these typically come in the form of a revision bump in `pkgsrc`, not in newer versions from the developers.

Packages not listed in the `list.txt` file should be updated to the latest version available (if found in `pkgsrc`). This is the case, for example, of the dependencies on the GNU Autotools in the `meta-pkgs/gnome-devel` meta package.

4. Generate a patch from the modified meta packages and extract the list of "new" lines. This will provide you an outline on what packages need to be updated in `pkgsrc` and in what order:
 

```
% cvs diff -u gnome-devel gnome-base gnome | grep '^+D' >todo.txt
```
5. For major desktop updates it is recommended to zap all your installed packages and start over from scratch at this point.
6. Now comes the longest step by far: iterate over the contents of `todo.txt` and update the packages listed in it in order. For major desktop updates none of these should be committed until the entire set is completed because there are chances of breaking not-yet-updated packages.
7. Once the packages are up to date and working, commit them to the tree one by one with appropriate log messages. At the end, commit the three meta package updates and all the corresponding changes to the `doc/CHANGES-<YEAR>` and `pkgsrc/doc/TODO` files.

## 22.4. Patching guidelines

GNOME is a very big component in `pkgsrc` which approaches 100 packages. Please, it is very important that you always, always, **always** feed back any portability fixes you do to a GNOME package to the mainstream developers (see Section 12.3.5). This is the only way to get their attention on portability issues and to ensure that future versions can be built out-of-the box on NetBSD. The less custom patches in `pkgsrc`, the easier further updates are. Those developers in charge of issuing major GNOME updates will be grateful if you do that.

The most common places to report bugs are the GNOME's GitLab (<https://gitlab.gnome.org/GNOME>) and the freedesktop.org's GitLab (<https://gitlab.freedesktop.org/explore/groups>). Not all components use these to track bugs, but most of them do. Do not be short on your reports: always provide detailed explanations of the current failure, how it can be improved to achieve maximum portability and, if at all possible, provide a patch against the main Git branch. The more verbose you are, the higher chances of your patch being accepted.

Also, please avoid using preprocessor magic to fix portability issues. While the FreeBSD GNOME people are doing a great job in porting GNOME to their operating system, the official GNOME sources are now plagued by conditionals that check for `__FreeBSD__` and similar macros. This hurts portability. Please see our patching guidelines (Section 12.3.4) for more details.

# Chapter 23.

## *Submitting and Committing*

---

### 23.1. Submitting binary packages

Our policy is that we accept binaries only from pkgsrc developers to guarantee that the packages don't contain any trojan horses etc. This is not to annoy anyone but rather to protect our users! You're still free to put up your home-made binary packages and tell the world where to get them. NetBSD developers doing bulk builds and wanting to upload them please see Chapter 8.

### 23.2. Submitting source packages (for non-NetBSD-developers)

Firstly, you can import new packages into pkgsrc-wip ("pkgsrc work-in-progress"); see the homepage at <https://pkgsrc.org/wip/> for details.

Next, check that your package is complete, compiles and runs well; see Chapter 14 and the rest of this document. Run the `pkgtools/pkglint` tool and fix any errors that appear.

Finally, send a report to the pkgsrc bug tracking system, either with the `send-pr(1)` command, or if you don't have that, go to the web page <https://www.NetBSD.org/support/send-pr.html>, which contains some instructions and a link to a form where you can submit packages. The `sysutils/gtk-send-pr` package is also available as a substitute for either of the above two tools.

In the form of the problem report, the category should be "pkg", the synopsis should include the package name and version number, and the description field should contain a short description of your package (contents of the `COMMENT` variable or `DESCR` file are OK).

### 23.3. General notes when adding, updating, or removing packages

Please note all package additions, updates, moves, and removals in `pkgsrc/doc/CHANGES-YYYY`. It's very important to keep this file up to date and conforming to the existing format, because it will be used by scripts to automatically update pages on [www.NetBSD.org](https://www.NetBSD.org/) (<https://www.NetBSD.org/>) and other sites. Additionally, check the `pkgsrc/doc/TODO` file and remove the entry for the package you updated or removed, in case it was mentioned there.

When the `PKGVERSION` of a package is bumped, the change should appear in `pkgsrc/doc/CHANGES-YYYY` if it is security related or otherwise relevant. Mass bumps that result from a dependency being updated should not be mentioned. In all other cases it's the developer's decision.

There is a make target that helps in creating proper `CHANGES-YYYY` entries: **make changes-entry**. It uses the optional `CTYPE` and `NETBSD_LOGIN_NAME` variables. The general usage is to first make sure that your `CHANGES-YYYY` file is up-to-date (to avoid having to resolve conflicts later-on) and then to **cd** to the package directory. For package updates, **make changes-entry** is enough. For new packages, or package

moves or removals, set the `CTYPE` variable on the command line to "Added", "Moved", or "Removed". You can set `NETBSD_LOGIN_NAME` in `mk.conf` if your local login name is not the same as your NetBSD login name. The target also automatically removes possibly existing entries for the package in the `TODD` file. Don't forget to commit the changes, e.g. by using **make commit-changes-entry**! If you are not using a checkout directly from `cvs.NetBSD.org`, but e.g. a local copy of the repository, you can set `USE_NETBSD_REPO=yes`. This makes the `cvs` commands use the main repository.

## 23.4. Commit Messages

For several years, there have been mirrors of `pkgsrc` in `fossil`, `git`, and `hg`. Standard practice when using these tools is to make the first line of a commit message function as a summary that can be read without the rest, such as is commonly done with "git log --oneline". For this reason, we have the following guidelines for `pkgsrc` commit messages:

- Start the commit message with a line that explains the big picture in 65 characters or less. When a commit is for one package, include the name of the package. For updates, include the version to which it is updated.
- Leave the next line empty.
- Then come the details for the commit (changes in that package, reason for a change) and any relevant PRs. Wrap this section.

Here is an example:

```
libxslt: update to 1.0.30

Changes since 1.0.29:
...
```

Here is another example:

```
mk/bsd.pkg.mk: enable SSP by default on NetBSD

(rationale)
```

Commit messages are final: no "cvs admin" is allowed on the `pkgsrc` repository to change commit messages.

## 23.5. Committing: Adding a package to CVS

This section is only of interest for `pkgsrc` developers with write access to the `pkgsrc` repository.

When the package is finished, "cvs add" the files. Start by adding the directory and then files in the directory. Don't forget to add the new package to the category's `Makefile`. Make sure you don't forget any files; you can check by running "cvs status". An example:

```
$ cd ../pkgsrc/category
$ cvs add pkgname
```

```

$ cd pkgname
$ cvs add DESCR Makefile PLIST distinfo buildlink3.mk patches
$ cvs add patches/p*
$ cvs status | less
$ cvs commit
$ cd ..
$ vi Makefile # add SUBDIR+=pkgname line
$ cvs commit Makefile
$ cd pkgname
$ make CTYPE=Added commit-changes-entry

```

The commit message of the initial import should include part of the `DESCR` file, so people reading the mailing lists know what the package is/does.

Also mention the new package in `pkgsrc/doc/CHANGES-20xx`.

Previously, “cvs import” was suggested, but it was much easier to get wrong than “cvs add”.

## 23.6. Updating a package to a newer version

Please always put a concise, appropriate and relevant summary of the changes between old and new versions into the commit log when updating a package. There are various reasons for this:

- A URL is volatile, and can change over time. It may go away completely or its information may be overwritten by newer information.
- Having the change information between old and new versions in our CVS repository is very useful for people who use either `cvs` or `anoncvs`.
- Having the change information between old and new versions in our CVS repository is very useful for people who read the `pkgsrc-changes` mailing list, so that they can make tactical decisions about when to upgrade the package.

Please also recognize that, just because a new version of a package has been released, it should not automatically be upgraded in the CVS repository. We prefer to be conservative in the packages that are included in `pkgsrc` - development or beta packages are not really the best thing for most places in which `pkgsrc` is used. Please use your judgement about what should go into `pkgsrc`, and bear in mind that stability is to be preferred above new and possibly untested features.

## 23.7. Renaming a package in `pkgsrc`

Renaming packages is not recommended.

When renaming packages, be sure to fix any references to the old name in other Makefiles, options, buildlink files, etc.

Also, when renaming a package, please add the package name and version pattern(s) of the previous package to `SUPERSEDES`. This may be repeated for multiple renames. The new package would be an exact replacement. Example:

```
SUPERSEDES+=      p5-IO-Compress-Zlib<2.017
```

```
SUPERSEDES+=      optcomp-[0-9]*
```

Note that “successor” in the CHANGES-YYYY file doesn’t necessarily mean that it *supersedes*, as that successor may not be an exact replacement but is a suggestion for the replaced functionality.

## 23.8. Moving a package in pkgsrc

It is preferred that packages are not renamed or moved, but if needed please follow these steps.

1. Make a copy of the directory somewhere else.
2. Remove all CVS dirs.

Alternatively to the first two steps you can also do:

```
% cvs -d user@cvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot export -D today pkgsrc/category/package
```

and use that for further work.

3. Fix CATEGORIES and any DEPENDS paths that just did “./package” instead of “../category/package”.
4. In the modified package’s Makefile, consider setting PREV\_PKGPATH to the previous category/package pathname. The PREV\_PKGPATH can be used by tools for doing an update using pkgsrc building; for example, it can search the pkg\_summary(5) database for PREV\_PKGPATH (if no SUPERSEDES) and then use the corresponding new PKGPATH for that moved package. Note that it may have multiple matches, so the tool should also check on the PKGBASE too. The PREV\_PKGPATH probably has no value unless SUPERSEDES is not set, i.e. PKGBASE stays the same.
5. **cvs add** the modified package in the new place.
6. Check if any package depends on it:
 

```
% cd /usr/pkgsrc
% grep /package */*/Makefile* */*/buildlink*
```
7. Fix paths in packages from step 5 to point to new location.
8. **cvs rm (-f)** the package at the old location.
9. Remove from oldcategory/Makefile.
10. Add to newcategory/Makefile.
11. Commit the changed and removed files:
 

```
% cvs commit oldcategory/package oldcategory/Makefile newcategory/Makefile
```

 (and any packages from step 5, of course).

# Chapter 24.

## *pkgsrc Policies*

---

### 24.1. Packages for which updating is restricted

In the past, some packages have caused more package failures than others, and we'd like to reduce this in the future.

For this reason, `pkgsrc-pmc` marks some packages with `POLICY_UPDATE_LIMITED`. The possible values currently are:

- `abi` for packages where ABI/API changes often broke the packages depending on them
- `bootstrap` for packages that are used during the `pkgsrc` bootstrap

`pkglint` will warn when committing updates to these packages.

#### 24.1.1. Limited Updates - ABI

Before committing non-micro version updates to packages marked with `POLICY_UPDATE_LIMITED=abi`, a limited bulk build of `meta-pkgs/bulk-test-{PACKAGE}` needs to be run and the result posted to the tech-pkg mailing list, highlighting what packages would stop building (if any).

Depending on the result, `pkgsrc-pmc` then decides:

- go ahead with the update
- wait for packages X, Y, Z to be fixed (upstream or locally) with the updated version, which is put in wip in the meantime
- In the second case, all `pkgsrc` developers are encouraged to work on fixing this - it is not only the updater's task to fix them.

The decision to wait for packages can be revisited.

#### 24.1.2. Limited Updates - Bootstrap

When updating packages used in the bootstrap, i.e. marked with `POLICY_UPDATE_LIMITED=bootstrap`, test the bootstrap process and preferably some basic packages and send the patch to the tech-pkg mailing list so it can be tested on other platforms as well. Give at least two weeks for feedback and testing by others.

## Chapter 25.

# *Frequently Asked Questions*

---

This section contains the answers to questions that may arise when you are writing a package. If you don't find your question answered here, first have a look in the other chapters, and if you still don't have the answer, ask on the `pkgsrc-users` mailing list.

**1. What is the difference between `MAKEFLAGS`, `.MAKEFLAGS` and `MAKE_FLAGS`?**

`MAKEFLAGS` are the flags passed to the `pkgsrc`-internal invocations of `make(1)`.

`MAKE_FLAGS` are the flags that are passed to the `MAKE_PROGRAM` when building the package.

`.MAKEFLAGS` is an internal variable of **make** and should not be used by packages.

**2. What is the difference between `MAKE`, `GMAKE` and `MAKE_PROGRAM`?**

`MAKE` is the path to the `make(1)` program that is used in the `pkgsrc` infrastructure.

`GMAKE` is the path to GNU Make, but you need to say `USE_TOOLS+=gmake` to use that.

`MAKE_PROGRAM` is the path to the Make program that is used for building the package.

**3. What is the difference between `CC`, `PKG_CC` and `PKGSRC_COMPILER`?**

`CC` is the path to the real C compiler, which can be configured by the `pkgsrc` user.

`PKG_CC` is the path to the compiler wrapper.

`PKGSRC_COMPILER` is *not* a path to a compiler, but the type of compiler that should be used. See `mk/compiler.mk` for more information about the latter variable.

**4. Why does `make show-var VARNAME=BUILDLINK_PREFIX.foo` say it's empty?**

For optimization reasons, some variables are only available in the “wrapper” phase and later. To “simulate” the wrapper phase, append `PKG_PHASE=wrapper` to the above command.

**5. What does `${MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE:=package/}` mean? I don't understand the `:=` inside it.**

The `:=` is not an assignment operator, even though it may look like one. Instead, it is a degenerate form of `${LIST:old_string=new_string}`, which is documented in the `make(1)` man page and which is commonly used in the form `${SRCS:.c=.o}`. In the case of `MASTER_SITE_*`, `old_string` is the empty string and `new_string` is `package/`. That's where the `:` and the `=` fall together.

**6. Which mailing lists are there for package developers?**

tech-pkg (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#tech-pkg>)

This is a list for technical discussions related to pkgsrc development, e.g. soliciting feedback for changes to pkgsrc infrastructure, proposed new features, questions related to porting pkgsrc to a new platform, advice for maintaining a package, patches that affect many packages, help requests moved from pkgsrc-users when an infrastructure bug is found, etc.

pkgsrc-bugs (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-bugs>)

All bug reports in category "pkg" sent with send-pr(1) appear here. Please do not report your bugs here directly; use one of the other mailing lists.

**7. Where is the pkgsrc documentation?**

There are many places where you can find documentation about pkgsrc:

- The pkgsrc guide (this document) is a collection of chapters that explain large parts of pkgsrc, but some chapters tend to be outdated. Which ones they are is hard to say.
- On the mailing list archives (see <https://mail-index.NetBSD.org/>), you can find discussions about certain features, announcements of new parts of the pkgsrc infrastructure and sometimes even announcements that a certain feature has been marked as obsolete. The benefit here is that each message has a date appended to it.
- Many of the files in the `mk/` directory start with a comment that describes the purpose of the file and how it can be used by the pkgsrc user and package authors. An easy way to find this documentation is to run **bmake help**.
- The CVS log messages are a rich source of information, but they tend to be highly abbreviated, especially for actions that occur often. Some contain a detailed description of what has changed, but they are geared towards the other pkgsrc developers, not towards an average pkgsrc user. They also only document *changes*, so if you don't know what has been before, these messages may not be worth too much to you.
- Some parts of pkgsrc are only "implicitly documented", that is the documentation exists only in the mind of the developer who wrote the code. To get this information, use the **cv**s **annotate** command to see who has written it and ask on the `tech-pkg` mailing list, so that others can find your questions later (see above). To be sure that the developer in charge reads the mail, you may CC him or her.

**8. I have a little time to kill. What shall I do?**

This is not really an FAQ yet, but here's the answer anyway.

- Run **pkg\_chk -N** (from the `pkgtools/pkg_chk` package). It will tell you about newer versions of installed packages that are available, but not yet updated in pkgsrc.
- Browse `pkgsrc/doc/TODO` — it contains a list of suggested new packages and a list of cleanups and enhancements for pkgsrc that would be nice to have.
- Review packages for which review was requested on the `tech-pkg` (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#tech-pkg>) mailing list.

# III. The pkgsrc infrastructure internals

This part of the guide deals with everything from the infrastructure that is behind the interfaces described in the developer's guide. A casual package maintainer should not need anything from this part.

## Chapter 26.

# *Design of the pkgsrc infrastructure*

---

The pkgsrc infrastructure consists of many small Makefile fragments. Each such fragment needs a properly specified interface. This chapter explains how such an interface looks like.

### 26.1. The meaning of variable definitions

Whenever a variable is defined in the pkgsrc infrastructure, the location and the way of definition provide much information about the intended use of that variable. Additionally, more documentation may be found in a header comment or in this pkgsrc guide.

A special file is `mk/defaults/mk.conf`, which lists all variables that are intended to be user-defined. They are either defined using the `?=` operator or they are left undefined because defining them to anything would effectively mean “yes”. All these variables may be overridden by the pkgsrc user in the `MAKECONF` file.

Outside this file, the following conventions apply: Variables that are defined using the `?=` operator may be overridden by a package.

Variables that are defined using the `=` operator may be used read-only at run-time.

Variables whose name starts with an underscore must not be accessed outside the pkgsrc infrastructure at all. They may change without further notice.

**Note:** These conventions are currently not applied consistently to the complete pkgsrc infrastructure.

### 26.2. Avoiding problems before they arise

All variables that contain lists of things should default to being empty. Two examples that do not follow this rule are `USE_LANGUAGES` and `DISTFILES`. These variables cannot simply be modified using the `+=` operator in package Makefiles (or other files included by them), since there is no guarantee whether the variable is already set or not, and what its value is. In the case of `DISTFILES`, the packages “know” the default value and just define it as in the following example.

```
DISTFILES=          ${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFX} additional-files.tar.gz
```

Because of the selection of this default value, the same value appears in many package Makefiles. Similarly for `USE_LANGUAGES`, but in this case the default value (“c”) is so short that it doesn’t stand out. Nevertheless it is mentioned in many files.

## 26.3. Variable evaluation

### 26.3.1. At load time

Variable evaluation takes place either at load time or at runtime, depending on the context in which they occur. The contexts where variables are evaluated at load time are:

- The right hand side of the `:=` and `!=` operators,
- Make directives like `.if` or `.for`,
- Dependency lines.

A special exception are references to the iteration variables of `.for` loops, which are expanded inline, no matter in which context they appear.

As the values of variables may change during load time, care must be taken not to evaluate them by accident. Typical examples for variables that should not be evaluated at load time are `DEPENDS` and `CONFIGURE_ARGS`. To make the effect more clear, here is an example:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS=      # none
CFLAGS=              -O
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=     CFLAGS=${CFLAGS:Q}

CONFIGURE_ARGS:=     ${CONFIGURE_ARGS}

CFLAGS+=             -Wall
```

This code shows how the use of the `:=` operator can quickly lead to unexpected results. The first paragraph is fairly common code. The second paragraph evaluates the `CONFIGURE_ARGS` variable, which results in `CFLAGS=-O`. In the third paragraph, the `-Wall` is appended to the `CFLAGS`, but this addition will not appear in `CONFIGURE_ARGS`. In actual code, the three paragraphs from above typically occur in completely unrelated files.

### 26.3.2. At runtime

After all the files have been loaded, the values of the variables cannot be changed anymore. Variables that are used in the shell commands are expanded at this point.

## 26.4. How can variables be specified?

There are many ways in which the definition and use of a variable can be restricted in order to detect bugs and violations of the (mostly unwritten) policies. A package can be checked with `pkglint -Wall` to see whether it meets these rules.

## 26.5. Designing interfaces for Makefile fragments

Most of the `.mk` files fall into one of the following classes. Cases where a file falls into more than one class should be avoided as it often leads to subtle bugs.

### 26.5.1. Procedures with parameters

In a traditional imperative programming language some of the `.mk` files could be described as procedures. They take some input parameters and—after inclusion—provide a result in output parameters. Since all variables in `Makefiles` have global scope care must be taken not to use parameter names that have already another meaning. For example, `PKGNAME` is a bad choice for a parameter name.

Procedures are completely evaluated at preprocessing time. That is, when calling a procedure all input parameters must be completely resolvable. For example, `CONFIGURE_ARGS` should never be an input parameter since it is very likely that further text will be added after calling the procedure, which would effectively apply the procedure to only a part of the variable. Also, references to other variables will be modified after calling the procedure.

A procedure can declare its output parameters either as suitable for use in preprocessing directives or as only available at runtime. The latter alternative is for variables that contain references to other runtime variables.

Procedures shall be written such that it is possible to call the procedure more than once. That is, the file must not contain multiple-inclusion guards.

Examples for procedures are `mk/bsd.options.mk` and `mk/buildlink3/bsd.builtin.mk`. To express that the parameters are evaluated at load time, they should be assigned using the `:=` operator, which should be used only for this purpose.

### 26.5.2. Actions taken on behalf of parameters

Action files take some input parameters and may define runtime variables. They shall not define loadtime variables. There are action files that are included implicitly by the pkgsrc infrastructure, while other must be included explicitly.

An example for action files is `mk/subst.mk`.

## 26.6. The order in which files are loaded

Package `Makefiles` usually consist of a set of variable definitions, and include the file `../../../../mk/bsd.pkg.mk` in the very last line. Before that, they may also include various other `*.mk` files if they need to query the availability of certain features like the type of compiler or the X11 implementation. Due to the heavy use of preprocessor directives like `.if` and `.for`, the order in which the files are loaded matters.

This section describes at which point the various files are loaded and gives reasons for that order.

### 26.6.1. The order in `bsd.prefs.mk`

The very first action in `bsd.prefs.mk` is to define some essential variables like `OPSYS`, `OS_VERSION` and `MACHINE_ARCH`.

Then, the user settings are loaded from the file specified in `MAKECONF`, which is usually `mk.conf`. After that, those variables that have not been overridden by the user are loaded from `mk/defaults/mk.conf`.

After the user settings, the system settings and platform settings are loaded, which may override the user settings.

Then, the tool definitions are loaded. The tool wrappers are not yet in effect. This only happens when building a package, so the proper variables must be used instead of the direct tool names.

As the last steps, some essential variables from the wrapper and the package system flavor are loaded, as well as the variables that have been cached in earlier phases of a package build.

### 26.6.2. The order in `bsd.pkg.mk`

First, `bsd.prefs.mk` is loaded.

Then, the various `*-vars.mk` files are loaded, which fill default values for those variables that have not been defined by the package. These variables may later be used even in unrelated files.

Then, the file `bsd.pkg.error.mk` provides the target `error-check` that is added as a special dependency to all other targets that use `DELAYED_ERROR_MSG` or `DELAYED_WARNING_MSG`.

Then, the package-specific hacks from `hacks.mk` are included.

Then, various other files follow. Most of them don't have any dependencies on what they need to have included before or after them, though some do.

The code to check `PKG_FAIL_REASON` and `PKG_SKIP_REASON` is then executed, which restricts the use of these variables to all the files that have been included before. Appearances in later files will be silently ignored.

Then, the files for the main targets are included, in the order of later execution, though the actual order should not matter.

At last, some more files are included that don't set any interesting variables but rather just define make targets to be executed.

# Chapter 27.

## *Regression tests*

---

The pkgsrc infrastructure consists of a large codebase, and there are many corners where every little bit of a file is well thought out, making pkgsrc likely to fail as soon as anything is changed near those parts. To prevent most changes from breaking anything, a suite of regression tests should go along with every important part of the pkgsrc infrastructure. This chapter describes how regression tests work in pkgsrc and how you can add new tests.

### 27.1. Running the regression tests

You first need to install the `pkgtools/pkg_regress` package, which provides the `pkg_regress` command. Then you can simply run that command, which will run all tests in the `regress/` directory.

### 27.2. Adding a new regression test

Every directory in the `regress/` directory that contains a file called `spec` is considered a regression test. This file is a shell program that is included by the `pkg_regress` command. The following functions can be overridden to suit your needs.

#### 27.2.1. Overridable functions

These functions do not take any parameters. Although they are called in “set -e” mode, they don’t stop at the first failing command. See this Stack Overflow question (<https://stackoverflow.com/q/4072984>) for details.

`do_setup`

This function prepares the environment for the test. By default it does nothing.

`do_test`

This function runs the actual test. By default, it calls `TEST_MAKE` with the arguments `MAKEARGS_TEST` and writes its output including error messages into the file `TEST_OUTFILE`.

When defining this function, make sure that all output that needs to be checked is written to the correct output file. Example:

```
do_test() {
    echo "Example output"
} 1>$TEST_OUTFILE 2>&1
```

`check_result`

This function is run after the test and is typically used to compare the actual output from the one that is expected. It can make use of the various helper functions from the next section. Example:

```
check_result() {
    exit_status 0
    output_require "Example"
    output_require "^[[:alpha:]]+[[[:space:]]][[:alpha:]]{6}$"
    output_prohibit "no such file or directory"
    regress_fail "expected $expected but got $actual for input $input"
}
```

`do_cleanup`

This function cleans everything up after the test has been run. By default it does nothing.

### 27.2.2. Helper functions

`regress_fail message...`

This function makes the test fail with the given error message.

`exit_status expected`

This function compares the exitcode of the **do\_test** function with its first parameter. If they differ, the test will fail.

`output_require regex...`

This function checks for each of its parameters if the output from **do\_test** matches the extended regular expression. If it does not, the test will fail. Example:

```
output_require "looks fine"
output_require "^[[:alpha:]]+[[[:space:]]][[:alpha:]]{6}$"
```

`output_prohibit regex...`

This function checks for each of its parameters if the output from **do\_test()** does *not* match the extended regular expression. If any of the regular expressions matches, the test will fail.

## Chapter 28.

# *Porting pkgsrc*

---

The pkgsrc system has already been ported to many operating systems, hardware architectures and compilers. This chapter explains the necessary steps to make pkgsrc even more portable.

### 28.1. Porting pkgsrc to a new operating system

To port pkgsrc to a new operating system (called `MyOS` in this example), you need to touch the following files:

`pkgtools/bootstrap-mk-files/files/mods/MyOS.sys.mk`

This file contains some basic definitions, for example the name of the C compiler.

`mk/bsd.prefs.mk`

Insert code that defines the variables `OPSYS`, `OS_VERSION`, `OPSYS_VERSION`, `LOWER_VENDOR`, `MACHINE_ARCH`, `OBJECT_FMT`, `APPEND_ELF`, and the other variables that appear in this file.

`mk/platform/MyOS.mk`

This file contains the platform-specific definitions that are used by pkgsrc. Start by copying one of the other files and edit it to your needs.

`mk/tools/tools.MyOS.mk`

This file defines the paths to all the tools that are needed by one or the other package in pkgsrc, as well as by pkgsrc itself. Find out where these tools are on your platform and add them.

Now, you should be able to build some basic packages, like `lang/perl5`, `shells/bash`.

## Appendix A.

# *A simple example package: bison*

---

We checked to find a piece of software that wasn't in the packages collection, and picked GNU bison. Quite why someone would want to have **bison** when Berkeley **yacc** is already present in the tree is beyond us, but it's useful for the purposes of this exercise.

### A.1. files

#### A.1.1. Makefile

```
# $NetBSD$
#

DISTNAME=      bison-1.25
CATEGORIES=    devel
MASTER_SITES=  ${MASTER_SITE_GNU:=bison/}

MAINTAINER=    pkgsrc-users@NetBSD.org
HOMEPAGE=     https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/bison.html
COMMENT=       GNU yacc clone

GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
INFO_FILES=    yes

.include "../../mk/bsd.pkg.mk"
```

#### A.1.2. DESCR

```
GNU version of yacc.  Can make re-entrant parsers, and numerous other
improvements.  Why you would want this when Berkeley yacc(1) is part
of the NetBSD source tree is beyond me.
```

#### A.1.3. PLIST

```
@comment $NetBSD$
bin/bison
man/man1/bison.1.gz
```

```
share/bison.simple
share/bison.hairy
```

### A.1.4. Checking a package with pkglint

The NetBSD package system comes with `pkgtools/pkglint` which helps to check the contents of these files. After installation it is quite easy to use, just change to the directory of the package you wish to examine and run **pkglint**:

```
$ pkglint
ERROR: Makefile: Each package must define its LICENSE.
WARN: Makefile:9: HOMEPAGE should migrate from http to https.
NOTE: PLIST:3: The .gz extension is unnecessary for manual pages.
WARN: PLIST:5: "share/bison.hairy" should be sorted before "share/bison.simple".
1 error, 2 warnings and 1 note found.
(Run "pkglint -e" to show explanations.)
(Run "pkglint -fs" to show what can be fixed automatically.)
(Run "pkglint -F" to automatically fix some issues.)
```

Depending on the supplied command line arguments (see `pkglint(1)`), more checks will be performed. Use e.g. **pkglint -Wall** for a very thorough check.

## A.2. Steps for building, installing, packaging

Create the directory where the package lives, plus any auxiliary directories:

```
# cd /usr/pkgsrc/lang
# mkdir bison
# cd bison
# mkdir patches
```

Create `Makefile`, `DESCR` and `PLIST` (see Chapter 12) then continue with fetching the distfile:

```
# make fetch
>> bison-1.25.tar.gz doesn't seem to exist on this system.
>> Attempting to fetch from ftp://prep.ai.mit.edu/pub/gnu//.
Requesting ftp://prep.ai.mit.edu/pub/gnu//bison-1.25.tar.gz (via ftp://orpheus.amdahl.com:8
ftp: Error retrieving file: 500 Internal error

>> Attempting to fetch from ftp://wuarchive.wustl.edu/systems/gnu//.
Requesting ftp://wuarchive.wustl.edu/systems/gnu//bison-1.25.tar.gz (via ftp://orpheus.amda
ftp: Error retrieving file: 500 Internal error

>> Attempting to fetch from ftp://ftp.freebsd.org/pub/FreeBSD/distfiles//.
Requesting ftp://ftp.freebsd.org/pub/FreeBSD/distfiles//bison-1.25.tar.gz (via ftp://orpheu
Successfully retrieved file.
```

Generate the checksum of the distfile into `distinfo`:



```
rm -f bison.sl
sed -e "/^#line/ s|bison|usr/pkg/share/bison|" < ./bison.simple > bison.sl
```

Everything seems OK, so install the files:

```
# make install
>> Checksum OK for bison-1.25.tar.gz.
==> Installing for bison-1.25
sh ./mkinstalldirs /usr/pkg/bin /usr/pkg/share /usr/pkg/info /usr/pkg/man/man1
rm -f /usr/pkg/bin/bison
cd /usr/pkg/share; rm -f bison.simple bison.hairy
rm -f /usr/pkg/man/man1/bison.1 /usr/pkg/info/bison.info*
install -c -o bin -g bin -m 555 bison /usr/pkg/bin/bison
/usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 bison.sl /usr/pkg/share/bison.simple
/usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 ./bison.hairy /usr/pkg/share/bison.hairy
cd .; for f in bison.info*; do /usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 $f /usr/pkg/info/$f; done
/usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 ./bison.1 /usr/pkg/man/man1/bison.1
==> Registering installation for bison-1.25
```

You can now use bison, and also - if you decide so - remove it with **pkg\_delete bison**. Should you decide that you want a binary package, do this now:

```
# make package
>> Checksum OK for bison-1.25.tar.gz.
==> Building package for bison-1.25
Creating package bison-1.25.tgz
Registering depends:.
Creating gzip'd tar ball in '/u/pkgsrc/lang/bison/bison-1.25.tgz'
```

Now that you don't need the source and object files any more, clean up:

```
# make clean
==> Cleaning for bison-1.25
```

# Appendix B.

## *Security hardening*

---

A number of mechanisms are available in `pkgsrc` to improve the security of the resulting system. This page describes the mechanisms, and gives hints about detecting and fixing problems.

Mechanisms can be enabled individually in `mk.conf`, and are individually described below.

Typically, a feature will cause some programs to fail to build or work when first enabled. This can be due to latent problems in the program, and can be due to other reasons. After enough testing to have confidence that user problems will be quite rare, individual mechanisms will be enabled by default.

For each mechanism, see the Caveats section below for an explanation of what might go wrong at compile time and at run time, and how to notice and address these problems.

### B.1. Mechanisms

#### B.1.1. Enabled by default

##### B.1.1.1. `PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY`

This allows substitute wrappers to be used for some commonly used library functions that do not have built-in bounds checking - but could in some cases.

Two mitigation levels are available:

- "weak" only enables checks at compile-time.
- "strong" enables checks at compile-time and runtime.

"strong" has been enabled by default since `pkgsrc-2017Q3`.

##### B.1.1.2. `PKGSRC_USE_SSP`

This enables a stack-smashing protection mitigation. It is done by adding a guard variable to functions with vulnerable objects. The guards are initialized when a function is entered and then checked when the function exits. The guard check will fail and the program forcibly exited if the variable was modified in the meantime. This can happen in case of buffer overflows or memory corruption, and therefore exposing these bugs.

Different mitigation levels are available:

- "yes", which will only protect functions considered vulnerable by the compiler;
- "all", which will protect every function;

- "strong", the default, which will apply a better balance between the two settings above.

This mitigation is supported by both GCC and clang. It may be supported in additional compilers, possibly under a different name. It is particularly useful for unsafe programming languages, such as C/C++.

- "yes" is enabled by default where known supported since pkgsrc-2017Q3.
- "strong" is enabled by default where known supported since pkgsrc-2021Q4.

More details can be found here:

- Buffer overflow protection on Wikipedia ([https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Buffer\\_overflow\\_protection](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Buffer_overflow_protection))

### **B.1.1.3. PKGSRC\_MKPIE**

This requests the creation of PIE (Position Independent Executables) for all executables. The PIE mechanism is normally used for shared libraries, so that they can be loaded at differing addresses at runtime. PIE itself does not have useful security properties; however, it is necessary to fully leverage some, such as ASLR. Some operating systems support Address Space Layout Randomization (ASLR), which causes different addresses to be used each time a program is run. This makes it more difficult for an attacker to guess addresses and thus makes exploits harder to construct. With PIE, ASLR can really be applied to the entire program, instead of the stack and heap only.

PIE executables will only be built for toolchains that are known to support PIE. Currently, this means NetBSD on x86, ARM, SPARC64, m68k, and MIPS.

PKGSRC\_MKPIE was enabled by default after the pkgsrc-2021Q3 branch.

### **B.1.1.4. PKGSRC\_USE\_RELRO**

This also makes the exploitation of some security vulnerabilities more difficult in some cases.

Two different mitigation levels are available:

- partial (the default): the ELF sections are reordered so that internal data sections precede the program's own data sections, and non-PLT GOT is read-only;
- full: in addition to partial RELRO, every relocation is performed immediately when starting the program, allowing the entire GOT to be read-only. This can greatly slow down startup of large programs.

This is currently supported by GCC. Many software distributions now enable this feature by default, at the "partial" level.

More details can be found here:

- Hardening ELF binaries using Relocation Read-Only (RELRO) (<https://www.redhat.com/en/blog/hardening-elf-binaries-using-relocation-read-only-relro>)

## B.1.2. Not enabled by default

### B.1.2.1. PKGSRC\_MKREPRO

With this option, `pkgsrc` will try to build packages reproducibly. This allows packages built from the same tree and with the same options, to produce identical results bit by bit. This option should be combined with ASLR and `PKGSRC_MKPIE` to avoid predictable address offsets for attackers attempting to exploit security vulnerabilities.

More details can be found here:

- Reproducible Builds - a set of software development practices that create an independently-verifiable path from source to binary code (<https://reproducible-builds.org/>)

More work likely needs to be done before `pkgsrc` is fully reproducible.

### B.1.2.2. PKGSRC\_USE\_STACK\_CHECK

This uses `-fstack-check` with GCC for another stack protection mitigation.

It asks the compiler to generate code verifying that it does not corrupt the stack. According to GCC's manual page, this is really only useful for multi-threaded programs.

## B.2. Caveats

### B.2.1. Problems with PKGSRC\_MKPIE

#### B.2.1.1. Packages failing to build

A number of packages may fail to build with this option enabled. The failures are often related to the absence of the `-fPIC` compilation flag when building libraries or executables (or ideally `-fPIE` in the latter case). This flag is added to the `CFLAGS` already, but requires the package to actually support it.

##### *B.2.1.1.1. How to fix*

These instructions are meant as a reference only; they likely need to be adapted for many packages individually.

For packages using `Makefiles`:

```
MAKE_FLAGS+= CFLAGS=${CFLAGS:Q}
MAKE_FLAGS+= LDFLAGS=${LDFLAGS:Q}
```

For packages using `Imakefiles`:

```
MAKE_FLAGS+= CCOPTIONS=${CFLAGS:Q}
MAKE_FLAGS+= LOCAL_LDFLAGS=${LDFLAGS:Q}
```

### B.2.1.2. Run-time crashes

Some programs may fail to run, or crash at random times once built as PIE. Two scenarios are essentially possible. This is nearly always due to a bug in the program being exposed due to ASLR.

### B.2.1.3. Disabling PKGSRC\_MKPIE on a per-package basis

Ideally, packages should be fixed for compatibility with MKPIE. However, in some cases this is very difficult, due to complex build systems, packages using non-standard toolchains, or programming languages with odd bootstrapping mechanisms.

To disable `PKGSRC_MKPIE` on a per-package basis, set `MKPIE_SUPPORTED= no` in the package's Makefile before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included.

## B.2.2. Problems with PKGSRC\_USE\_FORTIFY

### B.2.2.1. Packages failing to build

This feature makes use of pre-processing directives to look for hardened, alternative implementations of essential library calls. Some programs may fail to build as a result; this usually happens for those trying too hard to be portable, or otherwise abusing definitions in the standard library.

### B.2.2.2. Run-time crashes

This feature may cause some programs to crash, usually indicating an actual bug in the program. The fix will typically involve patching the original program's source code.

### B.2.2.3. Optimization is required

At least in the case of GCC, FORTIFY will only be applied if optimization is applied while compiling. This means that the `CFLAGS` should also contain `-O`, `-O2` or another optimization level. This cannot easily be applied globally, as some packages may require specific optimization levels.

### B.2.2.4. Disabling FORTIFY on a per-package basis

**Note:** FORTIFY should not be disabled to work around runtime crashes in the program! This is a very bad idea and will expose you to security vulnerabilities.

To disable FORTIFY on a per-package basis, set the following in the package's Makefile before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included:

```
FORTIFY_SUPPORTED= no
```

## B.2.3. Problems with PKGSRC\_USE\_RELRO

### B.2.3.1. Performance impact

For better protection, full RELRO requires every symbol to be resolved when the program starts, rather than simply when required at run-time. This will have more impact on programs using a lot of symbols, or linked to libraries exposing a lot of symbols. Therefore, daemons or programs otherwise running in background are affected only when started. Programs loading plug-ins at run-time are affected when loading the plug-ins.

The impact is not expected to be noticeable on modern hardware, except in some cases for big programs.

### B.2.3.2. Run-time crashes

Some programs handle plug-ins and dependencies in a way that conflicts with RELRO: for instance, with an initialization routine listing any other plug-in required. With full RELRO, the missing symbols are resolved before the initialization routine can run, and the dynamic loader will not be able to find them directly and abort as a result. Unfortunately, this is how Xorg loads its drivers. Partial RELRO can be applied instead in this case.

### B.2.3.3. Disabling RELRO on a per-package basis

To disable RELRO on a per-package basis, set the following in the package's `Makefile` before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included:

```
RELRO_SUPPORTED= no
```

It is also possible to at most enable partial RELRO, by setting `RELRO_SUPPORTED` to `partial`.

## B.2.4. Problems with PKGSRC\_USE\_SSP

### B.2.4.1. Packages failing to build

The stack-smashing protection provided by this option does not work for some programs. The most common situation in which this happens is when the program allocates variables on the stack, with the size determined at run-time.

### B.2.4.2. Run-time crashes

Again, this feature may cause some programs to crash via a `SIGABRT`, usually indicating an actual bug in the program.

On NetBSD `LOG_CRIT` level syslog messages are sent and - by default - appended to `/var/log/messages`, e.g.:

```
Jan  6 15:42:51 hostname -: hostname program - - - buffer overflow detected; terminated
```

(where `hostname` is the `hostname(1)` and `program` is the `basename(1)` of the program crashed).

Patching the original program is then required.

Rebuilding the package via:

```
% env CFLAGS=-g INSTALL_UNSTRIPPED=yes make replace
```

and inspecting the backtrace of the core dump via the debugger should point out the problematic call by inspecting the frame calling the `_chk()` (SSP) function.

### B.2.4.3. Performance impact

The compiler emits extra code when using this feature: a check for buffer overflows is performed when entering and exiting functions, requiring an extra variable on the stack. The level of protection can otherwise be adjusted to affect only those functions considered more sensitive by the compiler (with `-fstack-protector` instead of `-fstack-protector-all`).

The impact is not expected to be noticeable on modern hardware. However, programs with a hard requirement to run at the fastest possible speed should avoid using this feature, or using libraries built with this feature.

### B.2.4.4. Disabling SSP on a per-package basis

**Note:** SSP should not be disabled to work around runtime crashes in the program! This is a very bad idea and will expose you to security vulnerabilities.

To disable SSP on a per-package basis, set the following in the package's `Makefile` before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included:

```
SSP_SUPPORTED= no
```

## B.3. Auditing the system

The illusion of security is worse than having no security at all. This section lists a number of ways to ensure the security features requested are actually effective.

These instructions were obtained and tested on a system derived from NetBSD 7 (amd64). YMMV.

### B.3.1. Checking for PIE

The ELF executable type in use changes for binaries built as PIE; without:

```
$ file /path/to/bin/ary
/path/to/bin/ary: ELF 64-bit LSB executable, x86-64, version 1 (SYSV), dynamically linked (
```

as opposed to the following binary, built as PIE:

```
$ file /path/to/pie/bin/ary
```

/path/to/pie/bin/ary: ELF 64-bit LSB shared object, x86-64, version 1 (SYSV), dynamically l

The latter result is then what is expected.

### B.3.2. Checking for partial RELRO

The following command should list a section called RELRO:

```
$ objdump -p /path/to/bin/ary
```

```
/path/to/bin/ary:      file format elf64-x86-64
```

```
Program Header:
```

```
[...]
```

```
    RELRO off          0x00000000000000d78 vaddr 0x0000000000600d78 paddr 0x0000000000600d78 align
```

This check is now performed automatically if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set and RELRO is enabled.

### B.3.3. Checking for full RELRO

The dynamic loader will apply RELRO immediately when detecting the presence of the `BIND_NOW` flag:

```
$ objdump -x /path/to/bin/ary
```

```
/path/to/bin/ary:      file format elf64-x86-64
```

```
Dynamic Section:
```

```
[...]
```

```
    BIND_NOW           0x0000000000000000
```

This has to be combined with partial RELRO (see above) to be fully efficient.

This check is now performed automatically (where supported) if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set.

### B.3.4. Checking for SSP

**Note:** Checking for SSP using this method only works where the operating system uses `libssp`. `libssp` is not used on recent NetBSD/FreeBSD/Linux versions.

Building objects, binaries and libraries with SSP will affect the presence of additional symbols in the resulting file:

```
$ nm /path/to/bin/ary
```

```
[...]
```

```
                U __stack_chk_fail
0000000000600ea0 B __stack_chk_guard
```

This is an indicator that the program was indeed built with support for SSP.

This check is now performed automatically (where supported) if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set and SSP is enabled.

# Appendix C.

## *Build logs*

---

### C.1. Building figlet

```
# make
==> Checking for vulnerabilities in figlet-2.2.1nb2
=> figlet221.tar.gz doesn't seem to exist on this system.
=> Attempting to fetch figlet221.tar.gz from ftp://ftp.figlet.org/pub/figlet/program/unix/.
=> [172219 bytes]
Connected to ftp.plig.net.
220 ftp.plig.org NcFTPd Server (licensed copy) ready.
331 Guest login ok, send your complete e-mail address as password.
230-You are user #5 of 500 simultaneous users allowed.
230-
230-  _ _ _ _ _
230- | _ | | _ _ _ _ _ | | | _ _ _ _ _
230- | _ | _ | . | _ | . | | | . | _ | . |
230- | _ | | _ | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ |
230-      | _ | | _ | | _ | _ | _ |
230-
230-** Welcome to ftp.plig.org **
230-
230-Please note that all transfers from this FTP site are logged. If you
230-do not like this, please disconnect now.
230-
230-This archive is available via
230-
230-HTTP:  http://ftp.plig.org/
230-FTP:   ftp://ftp.plig.org/      (max 500 connections)
230-RSYNC: rsync://ftp.plig.org/  (max 30 connections)
230-
230-Please email comments, bug reports and requests for packages to be
230-mirrored to ftp-admin@plig.org.
230-
230-
230 Logged in anonymously.
Remote system type is UNIX.
Using binary mode to transfer files.
200 Type okay.
250 "/pub" is new cwd.
250-"/pub/figlet" is new cwd.
250-
250-Welcome to the figlet archive at ftp.figlet.org
250-
250- ftp://ftp.figlet.org/pub/figlet/
```

```

250-
250-The official FIGlet web page is:
250- http://www.figlet.org/
250-
250-If you have questions, please mailto:info@figlet.org. If you want to
250-contribute a font or something else, you can email us.
250
250 "/pub/figlet/program" is new cwd.
250 "/pub/figlet/program/unix" is new cwd.
local: figlet221.tar.gz remote: figlet221.tar.gz
502 Unimplemented command.
227 Entering Passive Mode (195,40,6,41,246,104)
150 Data connection accepted from 84.128.86.72:65131; transfer starting for figlet221.tar.g
38% |*****          | 65800      64.16 KB/s    00:01 ETA
226 Transfer completed.
172219 bytes received in 00:02 (75.99 KB/s)
221 Goodbye.
=> Checksum OK for figlet221.tar.gz.
===> Extracting for figlet-2.2.1nb2
===> Required installed package ccache-[0-9]*: ccache-2.3nb1 found
===> Patching for figlet-2.2.1nb2
===> Applying pkgsrc patches for figlet-2.2.1nb2
===> Overriding tools for figlet-2.2.1nb2
===> Creating toolchain wrappers for figlet-2.2.1nb2
===> Configuring for figlet-2.2.1nb2
===> Building for figlet-2.2.1nb2
gcc -O2 -DDEFAULTFONTDIR="/usr/pkg/share/figlet\" -DDEFAULTFONTFILE="/standard.flf\"  fig
chmod a+x figlet
gcc -O2 -o chkfont chkfont.c
=> Unwrapping files-to-be-installed.
#
# make install
===> Checking for vulnerabilities in figlet-2.2.1nb2
===> Installing for figlet-2.2.1nb2
install -d -o root -g wheel -m 755 /usr/pkg/bin
install -d -o root -g wheel -m 755 /usr/pkg/man/man6
mkdir -p /usr/pkg/share/figlet
cp figlet /usr/pkg/bin
cp chkfont /usr/pkg/bin
chmod 555 figlist showfigfonts
cp figlist /usr/pkg/bin
cp showfigfonts /usr/pkg/bin
cp fonts/*.flf /usr/pkg/share/figlet
cp fonts/*.flc /usr/pkg/share/figlet
cp figlet.6 /usr/pkg/man/man6
===> Registering installation for figlet-2.2.1nb2
#

```

## C.2. Packaging figlet

```
# make package
==> Checking for vulnerabilities in figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Packaging figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Building binary package for figlet-2.2.1nb2
Creating package /home/cvs/pkgsrc/packages/i386/All/figlet-2.2.1nb2.tgz
Using SrcDir value of /usr/pkg
Registering depends:.
#
```

## Appendix D.

# *Directory layout of the pkgsrc FTP server*

---

As in other big projects, the directory layout of pkgsrc is quite complex for newbies. This chapter explains where you find things on the FTP server. The base directory on `ftp.NetBSD.org` is `/pub/pkgsrc/` (`ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/`). On other servers it may be different, but inside this directory, everything should look the same, no matter on which server you are. This directory contains some subdirectories, which are explained below.

### D.1. `distfiles`: The distributed source files

The directory `distfiles` contains lots of archive files from all pkgsrc packages, which are mirrored here. The subdirectories are called after their package names and are used when the distributed files have names that don't explicitly contain a version number or are otherwise too generic (for example `release.tar.gz`).

### D.2. `misc`: Miscellaneous things

This directory contains things that individual pkgsrc developers find worth publishing.

### D.3. `packages`: Binary packages

This directory contains binary packages for the various platforms that are supported by pkgsrc. Each subdirectory is of the form `OPSYS/ARCH/OSVERSION_TAG`. The meaning of these variables is:

- `OPSYS` is the name of the operating system for which the packages have been built. The name is taken from the output of the `uname` command, so it may differ from the one you are used to hear.
- `ARCH` is the hardware architecture of the platform for which the packages have been built. It also includes the ABI (Application Binary Interface) for platforms that have several of them.
- `OSVERSION` is the version of the operating system. Typically it is the version defining an ABI, e.g. 9.0.
- `TAG` is either `20YYQN` for a stable branch, or `current` for packages built from the HEAD branch. The latter should only be used when the packages are updated on a regular basis.

The rationale for this scheme is that users can first search by `OPSYS` and `ARCH`, since these are more or less unchangeable. After that, there is a management set of directories with `OSVERSION` and `TAG`.

See also `README.md` in `packages` for more details, including about symlinks.

In each of these directories, there is a whole binary packages collection for a specific platform. It has a directory called `All` which contains all binary packages.

## D.4. reports: Bulk build reports

Here are the reports from bulk builds, for those who want to fix packages that didn't build on some of the platforms. The structure of subdirectories should look like the one in Section D.3.

## D.5. current, stable, pkgsrc-20xxQy: source packages

These directories contain the “real” pkgsrc, that is the files that define how to create binary packages from source archives.

Each of the `current`, `stable` and `pkgsrc-20xxQy` directories share the same structure. They each contain a `pkgsrc` directory and `pkgsrc.tar.{bz,gz,xz}` file.

The directory `pkgsrc` contains a snapshot of the CVS repository, which is updated regularly. The file `pkgsrc.tar.{bz,gz,xz}` contains the same as the directory, ready to be downloaded as a whole.

The `current` directory contains files related to the HEAD branch of the CVS repository. In this directory there is an additional file called `pkgsrc-readmes.tar.{bz,gz,xz}` that contains all pkgsrc READMEs with information about categories and packages.

The `stable` directory is a symlink to the latest `pkgsrc-20xxQy`.

The `pkgsrc-20xxQy` directories contain files related to the `-20xxQy` stable branch of the CVS repository. In these directories there is an additional file called `pkgsrc-20xxQy.tar.{bz,gz,xz}`, which contains the state of pkgsrc when it was branched.

# Appendix E.

## *Help topics*

---

The following list contains all help topics that are available when running `bmake help topic=:index`.

#!	-lintl
32bit	64bit
ABI	ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES
ACROREAD_FONTPATH	AFAIK
AIX	ALLOW_NETWORK_ACCESS
ALLOW_NEWER_COMPILER	ALLOW_VULNERABLE_PACKAGES
ALL_ENV	ALSA_PC
ALTERNATIVES_SRC	AMANDA_TMP
AMANDA_USER	AMANDA_VAR
APACHE_GROUP	APACHE_MODULE_NAME
APACHE_MODULE_SRC	APACHE_MODULE_SRCDIR
APACHE_PKG_PREFIX	APACHE_SUEXEC_CONFIGURE_ARGS
APACHE_SUEXEC_DOCROOT	APACHE_USER
ARGMAX_REQ	ARG_MAX
ARLA_CACHE	AUDIT_PACKAGES_FLAGS
AUTOCONF_REQD	AUTOMAKE_OVERRIDE
AUTOMAKE_REQD	AUTO_MKDIRS
AUX	BDB185_DEFAULT
BDBBASE	BDB_ACCEPTED
BDB_DEFAULT	BDB_LIBS
BDB_TYPE	BINCIMAP_GROUP
BINCIMAP_LOG_USER	BINCIMAP_USER
BIND_DIR	BIND_GROUP
BIND_USER	BINOWN
BINPKG_SITES	BIN_INSTALL_FLAGS
BISON_PKGDATADIR	BLAS
BLAS_ACCEPTED	BLAS_C_INTERFACE
BLAS_INCLUDES	BLAS_INDEX64
BLAS_LIBS	BLAS_PC
BLAS_TYPE	BOOTSTRAP_DEPENDS
BROKEN	BROKEN_EXCEPT_ON_PLATFORM
BROKEN_ON_PLATFORM	BSDSRCDIR
BSDXSRCDIR	BSD_MAKE_ENV
BUILDLINK_AUTO_DIRS	BUILDLINK_AUTO_VARS
BUILDLINK_CFLAGS	BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER
BUILDLINK_CPPFLAGS	BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD
BUILDLINK_FILES	BUILDLINK_FILES_CMD
BUILDLINK_FNAME_TRANSFORM	BUILDLINK_LDFLAGS
BUILDLINK_LIBS	BUILDLINK_OPSYS_SUPPORT_PTHREAD
BUILDLINK_PKGNAME	BUILDLINK_PREFIX
BUILDLINK_RPATHDIRS	BUILDLINK_TREE
BUILD_DEFS	BUILD_DEFS_EFFECTS
BUILD_DEPENDS	BUILD_DIRS
BUILD_ENV_SHELL	BUILD_MAKE_CMD
BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS	BUILD_TARGET
BUILTIN_FIND_FILES	BUILTIN_FIND_FILES_VAR
BUILTIN_FIND_GREP	BUILTIN_FIND_HEADERS
BUILTIN_FIND_HEADERS_VAR	BUILTIN_FIND_PKGCONFIG

BUILTIN\_FIND\_PKGCONFIG\_VAR  
 BUILTIN\_TEST\_CURSES\_DEFINES  
 BUILTIN\_VERSION\_SCRIPT  
 BUILTIN\_X11\_VERSION  
 CACTI\_USER  
 CANNA\_USER  
 CBLAS\_LIBS  
 CCACHE\_BASE  
 CCACHE\_LOGFILE  
 CC\_VERSION  
 CDRECORD\_CONF  
 CDROM\_PKG\_URL\_HOST  
 CHECKOUT\_DATE  
 CHECK\_FAKEHOME  
 CHECK\_FILES\_ONLY\_PREFIX  
 CHECK\_FILES\_STRICT  
 CHECK\_HEADERS\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_INTERPRETER\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_PERMS\_AUTOFIX  
 CHECK\_PIE  
 CHECK\_PIE\_SUPPORTED  
 CHECK\_PORTABILITY\_EXPERIMENTAL  
 CHECK\_RELRO  
 CHECK\_RELRO\_SUPPORTED  
 CHECK\_SHLIBS\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_SHLIBS\_TOXIC  
 CHECK\_SSP\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_STRIPPED  
 CHECK\_WRKREF  
 CHECK\_WRKREF\_SKIP  
 CLAMAV\_GROUP  
 CLANGBASE  
 CLT  
 CMAKE\_INSTALL\_NAME\_DIR  
 CMAKE\_MODULE\_PATH\_OVERRIDE  
 CMAKE\_PREFIX\_PATH  
 COMMON\_LISP\_DOCFILES  
 COMMON\_LISP\_EXTRAFILES  
 COMMON\_LISP\_SYSTEM  
 COMPILER\_USE\_SYMLINKS  
 CONFIGURE\_DIRS  
 CONFIGURE\_ENV\_SHELL  
 CONFIGURE\_HAS\_MANDIR  
 CONFIG\_SHELL  
 CONF\_FILES  
 CONF\_FILES\_PERMS  
 CONSERVER\_DEFAULTPORT  
 CPE  
 CPE\_LANG  
 CPE\_PART  
 CPE\_SW\_EDITION  
 CPE\_TARGET\_SW  
 CPE\_URI  
 CPE\_VERSION  
 CPP\_PRECOMP\_FLAGS  
 CROSSBASE  
 CTF\_FILES\_SKIP  
 CTYPE  
 CUPS\_SYSTEM\_GROUPS  
 CURSES\_DEFAULT  
 CVS\_EXTRACTDIR  
 BUILTIN\_PKG  
 BUILTIN\_TEST\_CURSES\_FUNCS  
 BUILTIN\_X11\_TYPE  
 CACTI\_GROUP  
 CANNA\_GROUP  
 CAT  
 CBLAS\_PC  
 CCACHE\_DIR  
 CCACHE\_RECACHE  
 CC\_VERSION\_STRING  
 CDROM\_PKG\_URL\_DIR  
 CHANGES  
 CHECK\_COMPILER  
 CHECK\_FILES  
 CHECK\_FILES\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_HEADERS  
 CHECK\_INTERPRETER  
 CHECK\_PERMS  
 CHECK\_PERMS\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_PIE\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_PORTABILITY  
 CHECK\_PORTABILITY\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_RELRO\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_SHLIBS  
 CHECK\_SHLIBS\_SUPPORTED  
 CHECK\_SSP  
 CHECK\_SSP\_SUPPORTED  
 CHECK\_STRIPPED\_SKIP  
 CHECK\_WRKREF\_EXTRA\_DIRS  
 CLAMAV\_DBDIR  
 CLAMAV\_USER  
 CLEANDEPENDS  
 CMAKE\_DEPENDENCIES\_REWRITE  
 CMAKE\_INSTALL\_PREFIX  
 CMAKE\_PKGSRC\_BUILD\_FLAGS  
 CMAKE\_USE\_GNU\_INSTALL\_DIRS  
 COMMON\_LISP\_EXAMPLES  
 COMMON\_LISP\_PACKAGES  
 COMPILER\_RPATH\_FLAG  
 CONFIGURE\_ARGS  
 CONFIGURE\_ENV  
 CONFIGURE\_HAS\_INFODIR  
 CONFIGURE\_SCRIPT  
 CONFIG\_SHELL\_FLAGS  
 CONF\_FILES\_MODE  
 CONSERVER\_DEFAULTHOST  
 CP  
 CPE\_EDITION  
 CPE\_OTHER  
 CPE\_PRODUCT  
 CPE\_TARGET\_HW  
 CPE\_UPDATE  
 CPE\_VENDOR  
 CPP  
 CREATE\_WRKDIR\_SYMLINK  
 CTFCONVERT  
 CTF\_SUPPORTED  
 CUPS\_GROUP  
 CUPS\_USER  
 CURSES\_TYPE  
 CVS\_MODULE

CVS_PROJECT	CVS_REPOSITORIES
CVS_ROOT	CVS_ROOT_GNU
CVS_ROOT_NONGNU	CVS_ROOT_SOURCEFORGE
CVS_TAG	CYRUS_GROUP
CYRUS_IDLE	CYRUS_USER
DAEMONTOOLS_GROUP	DAEMONTOOLS_LOG_USER
DARWIN_NO_SYSTEM_LIBS	DARWIN_REQUIRES_FILTER
DBUS_GROUP	DBUS_USER
DEFANG_GROUP	DEFANG_USER
DEFAULT_ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES	DEFAULT_DISTFILES
DEFAULT_IRC_SERVER	DEFAULT_SERIAL_DEVICE
DEF_UMASK	DEINSTALLDEPENDS
DEINSTALL_SRC	DEINSTALL_TEMPLATES
DELAYED_ERROR_MSG	DELAYED_WARNING_MSG
DEPENDS	DEPENDS_TARGET
DEPENDS_TYPE	DESTDIR
DESTDIR_VARNAME	DIALER_GROUP
DIGEST_REQD	DISTDIR
DISTFILES	DISTINFO_FILE
DISTNAME	DIST_PATH
DIST_SUBDIR	DJBDNS_AXFR_USER
DJBDNS_CACHE_USER	DJBDNS_DJBDNS_GROUP
DJBDNS_LOG_USER	DJBDNS_RBL_USER
DJBDNS_TINY_USER	DLOPEN_REQUIRE_PTHREADS
DL_AUTO_VARS	DL_CFLAGS
DL_LDFLAGS	DL_LIBS
DNS	DOCOWN
DOWNLOADED_DISTFILE	DQCACHE_GROUP
DQCACHE_USER	DT_LAYOUT
DYNAMIC_SITES_CMD	DYNAMIC_SITES_SCRIPT
ECHO	ECHO_N
ELK_GUI	EMACS_TYPE
EMULDIR	EMULSUBDIR
EMULSUBDIRSLASH	EMUL_ARCH
EMUL_DISTRO	EMUL_EXEC_FMT
EMUL_IS_NATIVE	EMUL_MODULES
EMUL_OPSYS	EMUL_PKG_FMT
EMUL_PLATFORM	EMUL_PLATFORMS
EMUL_PREFER	EMUL_REQD
EMUL_TYPE	ERROR_MSG
EXIM_GROUP	EXIM_USER
EXPORT_SYMBOLS_LDFLAGS	EXTRACTOR
EXTRACT_CMD	EXTRACT_CMD_DEFAULT
EXTRACT_DIR	EXTRACT_ELEMENTS
EXTRACT_ENV	EXTRACT_ONLY
EXTRACT_OPTS	EXTRACT_SUFX
EXTRACT_USING	FAIL
FAILOVER_FETCH	FAIL_MSG
FAKE_NCURSES	FAM
FAM_ACCEPTED	FAM_DEFAULT
FAM_SERVER	FCPATH
FETCH_AFTER_ARGS	FETCH_BEFORE_ARGS
FETCH_CMD	FETCH_INSECURE
FETCH_OUTPUT_ARGS	FETCH_PROXY
FETCH_RESUME_ARGS	FETCH_TIMEOUT
FETCH_USE_IPV4_ONLY	FETCH_USING
FILES_SUBST	FILES_SUBST_SED
FIX_SYSTEM_HEADERS	FONTDIR
FONTS_DIRS	FONTS_VERBOSE
FOO_HACKS_MK	FORCE_CXX_STD
FORCE_C_STD	FOSSIL_EXTRACTDIR

FOSSIL_REPO	FOSSIL_REPOSITORIES
FOSSIL_VERSION	FOX_USE_XUNICODE
FREEWNN_GROUP	FREEWNN_USER
FTP_PKG_URL_DIR	FTP_PKG_URL_HOST
GAMEDATAMODE	GAMEDATA_PERMS
GAMEDIRMODE	GAMEDIR_PERMS
GAMEGRP	GAMEMODE
GAMEOWN	GAMES_GROUP
GAMES_USER	GCC
GCCBASE	GCC_REQD
GCC_VERSION_SUFFIX	GEM_BUILD
GEM_CLEANBUILD	GEM_CLEANBUILD_EXTENSIONS
GEM_DOCDIR	GEM_EXTSRDIR
GEM_HOME	GEM_KEEPCBUILD
GEM_LIBDIR	GEM_NAME
GEM_PATH	GEM_PLUGINSDIR
GEM_SPECFILE	GENERATE_PLIST
GHC	GHOSTSCRIPT_REQD
GITHUB_PROJECT	GITHUB_RELEASE
GITHUB_SUBMODULES	GITHUB_TAG
GITHUB_TYPE	GITLAB_PROJECT
GITLAB_RELEASE	GITLAB_SUBMODULES
GITLAB_TAG	GITLAB_TYPE
GIT_BRANCH	GIT_ENV
GIT_EXTRACTDIR	GIT_REPO
GIT_REPOSITORIES	GIT_REVISION
GIT_TAG	GNAT
GNU	GNU_CONFIGURE
GNU_CONFIGURE_ICONV	GNU_CONFIGURE_INFODIR
GNU_CONFIGURE_MANDIR	GNU_CONFIGURE_QUIET
GNU_CONFIGURE_STRICT	GODEP_REDIRECTS
GO_BUILD_PATTERN	GO_DEPS
GO_DIST_BASE	GO_EXTRA_MOD_DIRS
GO_MODULE_EXTRACT	GO_MODULE_FILES
GO_SRCPATH	GROUP_SPECIFIC_PKGS
GRUB_NETWORK_CARDS	GRUB_PRESET_COMMAND
GRUB_SCAN_ARGS	GZIP
HASKELL_COMPILER	HASKELL_DISABLE_EXECUTABLES
HASKELL_DISABLE_LIBRARIES	HASKELL_ENABLE_DYNAMIC_EXECUTABLE
HASKELL_ENABLE_HADDOCK_DOCUMENTATION	HASKELL_ENABLE_LIBRARY_PROFILING
HASKELL_ENABLE_SHARED_LIBRARY	HASKELL_ENABLE_TESTS
HASKELL_OPTIMIZATION_LEVEL	HASKELL_PKG_NAME
HASKELL_UNRESTRICT_DEPENDENCIES	HEADER_TEMPLATES
HG_REPO	HG_REPOSITORIES
HG_TAG	HOMEPAGE
HOST_PKGTOOLS_ARGS	HOST_SPECIFIC_PKGS
HOWL_GROUP	HOWL_USER
ICCBASE	ICECAST_CHROOTDIR
ICON_THEMES	IDOBASE
IGNORE_CCACHE	IGNORE_INFO_DIRS
IGNORE_INTERACTIVE_FETCH	IMAKE
IMAKEOPTS	IMAKE_MAKE
IMAKE_MANINSTALL	IMAP_UW_CCLIENT_MBOX_FMT
IMDICTDIR	INCOMPAT_CURSES
INFO_DIR	INFO_FILES
INFO_MSG	INIT_SYSTEM
INN_DATA_DIR	INN_GROUP
INN_USER	INSTALLATION_DIRS
INSTALLATION_DIRS_FROM_PLIST	INSTALL_ENV
INSTALL_ENV_SHELL	INSTALL_SH_OVERRIDE
INSTALL_SRC	INSTALL_TEMPLATES

INSTALL_UNSTRIPPED	IRCD_HYBRID_IRC_GROUP
IRCD_HYBRID_IRC_USER	IRCD_HYBRID_MAXCONN
IRCD_HYBRID_NICLEN	IRCD_HYBRID_SYSLOG_EVENTS
IRCD_HYBRID_SYSLOG_FACILITY	IRCD_HYBRID_TOPICLEN
IRIX	IRRD_USE_PGP
JABBERD_GROUP	JABBERD_LOGDIR
JABBERD_PIDDIR	JABBERD_SPOOLDIR
JABBERD_USER	JAVA_APP_PATH
JAVA_APP_TARGETS	JAVA_BINPREFIX
JAVA_CLASSPATH	JAVA_HOME
JAVA_LD_LIBRARY_PATH	JAVA_NAME
JAVA_UNLIMIT	JAVA_WRAPPERS
JPEG_ACCEPTED	JPEG_DEFAULT
KERBEROS	KERMIT_SUID_UUCP
KJS_USE_PCRE	KNEWS_DOMAIN_FILE
KNEWS_DOMAIN_NAME	KRB5_ACCEPTED
KRB5_DEFAULT	LANGUAGES
LAPACKE_LIBS	LAPACKE_PC
LAPACK_LIBS	LAPACK_PC
LATEX2HTML_ICONPATH	LDCONFIG_ADD_CMD
LDCONFIG_REMOVE_CMD	LDD
LEAFNODE_DATA_DIR	LEAFNODE_GROUP
LEAFNODE_USER	LIBDVDCSS_HOMEPAGE
LIBDVDCSS_MASTER_SITES	LIBIMAGEQUANT_TYPE
LIBRSVG_TYPE	LIBTOOL
LIBTOOLIZE_PLIST	LIBTOOL_M4_OVERRIDE
LIBUSB_TYPE	LICENSE
LINKER_RPATH_FLAG	LINK_RPATH_FLAG
LINUX_BASE_NODEPS	LINUX_BASE_PREFERRED
LINUX_BASE_REQUIRED	LINUX_LOCALES
LOCALBASE	LOCALBASE_LOCKTYPE
LOCALPATCHES	LOVE_DATA
LOVE_GAME	LOVE_VERSION
LOWER_OPSYS	LOWER_OPSYS_VERSUFFIX
LOWER_VARIANT_VERSION	LOWER_VENDOR
LP32PLATFORMS	LP64PLATFORMS
LUA_BUSTED_ARGS	LUA_CDIR
LUA_COMPILER	LUA_DOCDIR
LUA_EXAMPLESDIR	LUA_INCDIR
LUA_INTERPRETER	LUA_LDIR
LUA_LINKER_MAGIC	LUA_PKGPREFIX
LUA_SELF_CONFLICT	LUA_USE_BUSTED
LUA_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED	LUA_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE
LUA_VERSION_DEFAULT	LUA_VERSION_REQD
Lua	MACHINE_PLATFORM
MAILAGENT_DOMAIN	MAILAGENT_EMAIL
MAILAGENT_FQDN	MAILAGENT_ORGANIZATION
MAJORDOMO_HOMEDIR	MAJOR_OS_VERSION
MAKEINFO_ARGS	MAKE_DIRS
MAKE_DIRS_PERMS	MAKE_ENV
MAKE_FILE	MAKE_FLAGS
MAKE_JOBS	MAKE_JOBS_SAFE
MAKE_PROGRAM	MANCOMPRESSED_IF_MANZ
MANINSTALL	MANZ
MARIADB_VERSIONS_ALL	MASTER_SITES
MASTER_SITE_BACKUP	MASTER_SITE_LOCAL
MASTER_SITE_MOZILLA	MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE
MASTER_SITE_PERL_CPAN	MASTER_SORT
MASTER_SORT_RANDOM	MASTER_SORT_REGEX
MECAB_CHARSET	MEDIATOMB_GROUP
MEDIATOMB_USER	MIPSPROBASE

MIREDO_GROUP	MIREDO_USER
MISSING_FEATURES	MKDIR
MKPIE_SUPPORTED	MLDONKEY_GROUP
MLDONKEY_HOME	MLDONKEY_USER
MONOTONE_GROUP	MONOTONE_USER
MOTIFBASE	MOTIF_TYPE
MOTIF_TYPE_DEFAULT	MPI_TYPE
MSGFMT_STRIP_MSGCTXT	MSGFMT_STRIP_MSGID_PLURAL
MTOOLS_ENABLE_FLOPPYD	MUST
MV	MYSQL_CHARSET
MYSQL_DATADIR	MYSQL_EXTRA_CHARSET
MYSQL_GROUP	MYSQL_USER
MYSQL_VERSION	MYSQL_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED
MYSQL_VERSION_DEFAULT	NAGIOSCMD_GROUP
NAGIOSDIR	NAGIOS_GROUP
NAGIOS_USER	NATIVE_EXEC_FMT
NATIVE_LOWER_OPSYS	NATIVE_LOWER_VENDOR
NATIVE_MACHINE_PLATFORM	NATIVE_OBJECT_FMT
NATIVE_OPSYS_VERSION	NATIVE_OS_VARIANT
NATIVE_OS_VERSION	NBPAX_PROGRAM_PREFIX
NETBSD_LOGIN_NAME	NMH_EDITOR
NMH_MTA	NMH_PAGER
NODE_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED	NODE_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE
NODE_VERSION_DEFAULT	NODE_VERSION_REQD
NOLOGIN	NOTE
NOT_FOR_PLATFORM	NOT_PAX_ASLR_SAFE
NOT_PAX_MPROTECT_SAFE	NO_BUILD
NO_CHECKSUM	NO_CONFIGURE
NO_SKIP	NSD_GROUP
NSD_LOG_FACILITY	NSD_USER
NS_PREFERRED	NULLMAILER_GROUP
NULLMAILER_USER	OBJECT_FMT
OBJHOSTNAME	OBJMACHINE
OCAML_FINDLIB_DIRS	OCAML_FINDLIB_REGISTER
OCAML_FINDLIB_REGISTER_VERBOSE	OCAML_SITELIBDIR
OMF	ONLY_FOR_COMPILER
ONLY_FOR_PLATFORM	OPENSSSH_CHROOT
OPENSSSH_GROUP	OPENSSSH_USER
OPSYS	OPSYS_EMULDIR
OPSYS_VERSION	OS
OSS_TYPE	OSX
OSX_PATH_TO_M4	OSX_PATH_TO_YACC
OS_HAVE_ALSA	OS_HAVE_RCD
OS_VARIANT	OS_VERSION
OTF_FONTS_DIR	OVERRIDE_DIRDEPTH
OVERRIDE_GEMSPEC	OVERRIDE_GNU_CONFIG_SCRIPTS
OVERRIDE_ROCKSPEC	OWN_DIRS
OWN_DIRS_PERMS	P4GROUP
P4PORT	P4ROOT
P4USER	PACKAGES
PALMOS_DEFAULT_SDK	PAMBASE
PAM_DEFAULT	PAPERSIZE
PASSIVE_FETCH	PATCHDIR
PATCHFILES	PATCH_ARGS
PATCH_DEBUG	PATCH_DIST_ARGS
PATCH_DIST_CAT	PATCH_DIST_STRIP
PATCH_FUZZ_FACTOR	PATCH_STRIP
PATH	PCCBASE
PEAR	PEAR_CHANNEL
PEAR_CHANNEL_ALIAS	PEAR_CHANNEL_VERSION
PEAR_CMD	PEAR_LIB

PEAR_PACKAGE_XML	PEP-518
PERL5	PERL5_CONFIGURE
PERL5_CONFIGURE_DIRS	PERL5_LDFLAGS
PERL5_LICENSE	PERL5_MODULE_TYPE
PERL5_PACKLIST	PERL5_PACKLIST_DIR
PERL5_PERLBASE	PERL5_SITEBASE
PERL5_USE_PACKLIST	PERL5_VENDORBASE
PFCTL	PFVAR_H
PF_VERSION	PGGROUP
PGHOME	PGPKGSRCDIR
PGSQL_TYPE	PGSQL_VERSION
PGSQL_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED	PGSQL_VERSION_DEFAULT
PGUSER	PG_LIB_EXT
PHP	PHPCOMMON_MK
PHPPKGSRCDIR	PHP_BASE_VERS
PHP_EGDIR	PHP_EXTENSION_DIR
PHP_INCDIR	PHP_LIBDIR
PHP_MAJOR_VERS	PHP_MINIMUM_TEENY
PHP_MINOR_VERS	PHP_PKG_PREFIX
PHP_SHAREDIR	PHP_VER
PHP_VERSION	PHP_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED
PHP_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE	PHP_VERSION_DEFAULT
PHP_VERSION_REQD	PILRC_USE_GTK
PKGCONFIG_BASE	PKGCONFIG_FILE
PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDES	PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDES_STAGE
PKGDIR	PKGGNUDIR
PKGINFODIR	PKGLOCALEDIR
PKGMANDIR	PKGNAME
PKGNAME_REQD	PKGPATH
PKGREVISION	PKGSRC_BLAS_TYPES
PKGSRC_CHANGES	PKGSRC_COMPILER
PKGSRC_KEEP_BIN_PKGS	PKGSRC_LOCKTYPE
PKGSRC_MAKE_ENV	PKGSRC_MESSAGE_RECIPIENTS
PKGSRC_MKPIE	PKGSRC_MKREPRO
PKGSRC_OVERRIDE_MKPIE	PKGSRC_RUN_TEST
PKGSRC_SETENV	PKGSRC_SLEEPSECS
PKGSRC_TODO	PKGSRC_USE_CTF
PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY	PKGSRC_USE_MKTOOLS
PKGSRC_USE_RELRO	PKGSRC_USE_SSP
PKGSRC_USE_STACK_CHECK	PKGTASKS_DATAFILE
PKGTOOLS_ARGS	PKGTOOLS_ENV
PKG_ALTERNATIVES	PKG_APACHE
PKG_APACHE_ACCEPTED	PKG_APACHE_DEFAULT
PKG_BEST_EXISTS	PKG_BUILD_OPTIONS
PKG_COMPRESSION	PKG_CONFIG
PKG_CONFIG_PERMS	PKG_CREATE_USERGROUP
PKG_DBDIR	PKG_DB_TMPDIR
PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL	PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS
PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT	PKG_DEVELOPER
PKG_DISABLED_OPTIONS	PKG_FATAL_ERRORS
PKG_FC	PKG_FILELIST_CMD
PKG_GECOS	PKG_GID
PKG_GROUPS	PKG_GROUPS_VARS
PKG_HOME	PKG_INIT_SCRIPTS
PKG_JAVA_HOME	PKG_JVM
PKG_JVMS_ACCEPTED	PKG_JVM_DEFAULT
PKG_LEGACY_OPTIONS	PKG_LIBTOOL
PKG_MKSYMLINKS	PKG_OPTIONS
PKG_OPTIONS_DEPRECATED_WARNINGS	PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS
PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS	PKG_OPTIONS_NONEMPTY_SETS
PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS	PKG_OPTIONS_REQUIRED_GROUPS

PKG\_OPTIONS\_VAR  
 PKG\_REFCOUNT\_DBDIR  
 PKG\_RESUME\_TRANSFERS  
 PKG\_SUGGESTED\_OPTIONS  
 PKG\_SYSCONFBASE  
 PKG\_SYSCONFDIR  
 PKG\_SYSCONFSUBDIR  
 PKG\_TOOLS\_BIN  
 PKG\_UPDATE FONTS\_DB  
 PKG\_USERS\_VARS  
 PLEASE  
 PLIST\_AWK  
 PLIST\_SRC  
 PLIST\_TYPE  
 POPTOP\_USE\_MPPE  
 POST\_FETCH\_HOOK  
 PREFER\_NATIVE  
 PREFER\_PKGSRC  
 PREPEND\_PATH  
 PRIVILEGED\_STAGES  
 PTHREAD\_AUTO\_VARS  
 PTHREAD\_LDFLAGS  
 PTHREAD\_OPTS  
 PVM\_SSH  
 PYSOABISUFFIX  
 PYTHON\_SELF\_CONFLICT  
 PYTHON\_VERSIONED\_DEPENDENCIES  
 PYTHON\_VERSIONS\_INCOMPATIBLE  
 PYTHON\_VERSION\_REQD  
 QMAILDIR  
 QMAIL\_DAEMON\_USER  
 QMAIL\_NOFILES\_GROUP  
 QMAIL\_QMAIL\_GROUP  
 QMAIL\_QUEUE\_EXTRA  
 QMAIL\_REMOTE\_USER  
 QMAIL\_SEND\_USER  
 QORE\_MODULE\_API  
 QORE\_USER\_MODULE\_DIR  
 QPOPPER\_FAC  
 QPOPPER\_USER  
 RASMOL\_DEPTH  
 RCD\_ORDER  
 RCD\_SCRIPTS\_DIR  
 RCD\_SCRIPTS\_MODE  
 RCD\_SCRIPT\_SRC  
 RDOC  
 READLINE\_TYPE  
 REAL\_ROOT\_USER  
 RELAY\_CTRL\_DIR  
 REPLACE\_AWK  
 REPLACE\_CSH  
 REPLACE\_LUA  
 REPLACE\_OCTAVE  
 REPLACE\_PERL6  
 REPLACE\_PYTHON  
 REPLACE\_R  
 REPLACE\_RUBY\_DIRS  
 REPLACE\_SH  
 REPLACE\_TOOL\_PYTHON  
 REQD\_DIRS  
 PKG\_RCD\_SCRIPTS  
 PKG\_REGISTER\_SHELLS  
 PKG\_SHELL  
 PKG\_SUPPORTED\_OPTIONS  
 PKG\_SYSCONFBASEDIR  
 PKG\_SYSCONFDIR\_PERMS  
 PKG\_SYSCONFVAR  
 PKG\_UID  
 PKG\_USERS  
 PKG\_VERBOSE  
 PLIST  
 PLIST\_AWK\_ENV  
 PLIST\_SUBST  
 PLIST\_VARS  
 POSSIBLE\_GFORTRAN\_VERSION  
 PREFER  
 PREFER\_NATIVE\_PTHREADS  
 PREFIX  
 PRE\_ROOT\_CMD  
 PS  
 PTHREAD\_CFLAGS  
 PTHREAD\_LIBS  
 PTHREAD\_TYPE  
 PYPKGPREFIX  
 PYTHON\_FOR\_BUILD\_ONLY  
 PYTHON\_VERSION  
 PYTHON\_VERSIONS\_ACCEPTED  
 PYTHON\_VERSION\_DEFAULT  
 PYVERSSUFFIX  
 QMAIL\_ALIAS\_USER  
 QMAIL\_LOG\_USER  
 QMAIL\_PASSWD\_USER  
 QMAIL\_QUEUE\_DIR  
 QMAIL\_QUEUE\_USER  
 QMAIL\_ROOT\_USER  
 QORE\_LATEST\_MODULE\_API  
 QORE\_MODULE\_DIR  
 QORE\_VERSION  
 QPOPPER\_SPOOL\_DIR  
 RAKE\_NAME  
 RCD\_DIR  
 RCD\_SCRIPTS  
 RCD\_SCRIPTS\_EXAMPLEDIR  
 RCD\_SCRIPTS\_SHELL  
 RCD\_SUBR  
 READLINE\_DEFAULT  
 REAL\_ROOT\_GROUP  
 RECURSIVE\_MAKE  
 RELRO\_SUPPORTED  
 REPLACE\_BASH  
 REPLACE\_KSH  
 REPLACE\_NODEJS  
 REPLACE\_PERL  
 REPLACE\_PHP  
 REPLACE\_QORE  
 REPLACE\_RUBY  
 REPLACE\_RUBY\_PAT  
 REPLACE\_TEXLUA  
 REPLACE\_WISH  
 REQD\_DIRS\_PERMS

REQD_FILES	REQD_FILES_MODE
REQD_FILES_PERMS	RESOLV_AUTO_VARS
RESOLV_LDFLAGS	RESOLV_LIBS
RM	ROCKSPEC_NAME
ROCKSPEC_SPECFILE	ROOT_CMD
ROOT_GROUP	ROOT_USER
RPCGEN	RPM
RPM2PKG_PLIST	RPM2PKG_PREFIX
RPM2PKG_STAGE	RPM2PKG_STRIP
RPM2PKG_SUBPREFIX	RPMFILES
RPMIGNOREPATH	RPM_DB_PREFIX
RSSH_CVS_PATH	RSSH_RDIST_PATH
RSSH_RSYPN_PATH	RSSH_SCP_PATH
RSSH_SFTP_SERVER_PATH	RUBY
RUBYGEM	RUBYGEM_MANPAGES
RUBYGEM_NAME	RUBYGEM_OPTIONS
RUBYGEM_USE_MANPAGES	RUBYGEM_VERBOSE
RUBY_ABI_VERSION	RUBY_ARCH
RUBY_ARCHINC	RUBY_ARCHLIB
RUBY_BASE	RUBY_BASERIDIR
RUBY_BUILD_DOCUMENT	RUBY_DLEXT
RUBY_DOC	RUBY_DYNAMIC_DIRS
RUBY_EG	RUBY_ENCODING_ARG
RUBY_EXTCONF	RUBY_EXTCONF_CHECK
RUBY_EXTCONF_DEBUG	RUBY_EXTCONF_MAKEFILE
RUBY_GEM_ARCH	RUBY_GEM_BASE
RUBY_INC	RUBY_LIB
RUBY_LIB_BASE	RUBY_NAME
RUBY_NOVERSION	RUBY_PKGPREFIX
RUBY_RAILS	RUBY_RAILS61_VERSION
RUBY_RAILS70_VERSION	RUBY_RAILS71_VERSION
RUBY_RAILS72_VERSION	RUBY_RAILS80_VERSION
RUBY_RAILS_ACCEPTED	RUBY_RAILS_DEFAULT
RUBY_RAILS_REQD	RUBY_RAILS_STRICT_DEP
RUBY_RIDIR	RUBY_SETUP
RUBY_SHLIB	RUBY_SHLIBALIAS
RUBY_SHLIBVER	RUBY_SIMPLE_INSTALL
RUBY_SITELIB	RUBY_SITELIB
RUBY_SITELIB_BASE	RUBY_SITERIDIR
RUBY_SLEXT	RUBY_SRCDIR
RUBY_STATICLIB	RUBY_SUFFIX
RUBY_SYSRIDIR	RUBY_USE_PTHREAD
RUBY_VENDORARCHLIB	RUBY_VENDORLIB
RUBY_VENDORLIB_BASE	RUBY_VER
RUBY_VERSION	RUBY_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED
RUBY_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE	RUBY_VERSION_DEFAULT
RUBY_VERSION_REQD	RUBY_VER_DIR
RUN	RUN_LDCONFIG
RUST_TYPE	SCO
SCREWS_GROUP	SCREWS_USER
SCRIPTS_ENV	SCROLLKEEPER_DATADIR
SCROLLKEEPER_REBUILddb	SCROLLKEEPER_UPDATEDb
SDIST_PAWD	SDL12_TYPE
SERIAL_DEVICES	SETGIDGAME
SETGID_GAMES_PERMS	SETUID_ROOT_PERMS
SH	SHLIB_EXT
SHORTNAME	SIGN_PACKAGES
SILC_CLIENT_WITH_PERL	SITE_SPECIFIC_PKGS
SKIP_DEPENDS	SMF_INSTANCES
SMF_MANIFEST	SMF_METHODS
SMF_METHOD_SHELL	SMF_METHOD_SRC

SMF_NAME	SMF_PREFIX
SMF_SRCDIR	SNIPROXY_GROUP
SNIPROXY_USER	SOURCE_BUFFER_SIZE
SPECIAL_PERMS	SPECIFIC_PKGS
SSH_SUID	SSLCERTBUNDLE
SSLCERTS	SSLDIR
SSLKEYS	SSP_SUPPORTED
SSYNC_PAWD	STEP_MSG
STRIP	STRIP_DBG
STRIP_DEBUG	STRIP_DEBUG_SUPPORTED
STRIP_FILES_SKIP	SU
SUBDIR	SUBST
SUBST_CLASSES	SUBST_FILES
SUBST_FILTER_CMD	SUBST_MESSAGE
SUBST_NOOP_OK	SUBST_SED
SUBST_SHOW_DIFF	SUBST_SKIP_TEXT_CHECK
SUBST_STAGE	SUBST_VARS
SUNWSPROBASE	SUSE_PREFER
SU_CMD	SVN_EXTRACTDIR
SVN_REPO	SVN_REPOSITORIES
SVN_REVISION	SYSCONFBASE
TARGET_MACHINE_ARCH	TBL
TERMCAP_TYPE	TERMINFO_DEFAULT
TERMINFO_TYPE	TEST
TEST_DEPENDS	TEST_DIRS
TEST_ENV	TEST_ENV_SHELL
TEST_MAKE_CMD	TEST_MAKE_FLAGS
TEST_TARGET	TEXTLIVE_IGNORE_PATTERNS
TEXTLIVE_REV	TEXTLIVE_UNVERSIONED
TEXMFSITE	TEX_FORMATS
TEX_HYPHEN_DAT	TEX_HYPHEN_DEF
TEX_TEXMF_DIRS	THHTTPD_LOG_FACILITY
TINYDYN_USER	TLS
TLWRAPPER_CHROOT	TO
TOOLDIR	TOOLS_ALIASES
TOOLS_ALWAYS_WRAP	TOOLS_ARGS
TOOLS_BROKEN	TOOLS_CMD
TOOLS_CMDLINE_SED	TOOLS_CREATE
TOOLS_CROSS_DESTDIR	TOOLS_DIR
TOOLS_FAIL	TOOLS_GNU_MISSING
TOOLS_LDCONFIG	TOOLS_NOOP
TOOLS_PATH	TOOLS_SCRIPT
TOOLS_USE_CROSS_COMPILE	TOOL_DEPENDS
TTF_FONTDIR	TTF_FONTS_DIR
TYPE	UAC_REQD_EXECS
UCSPI_SSL_GROUP	UCSPI_SSL_USER
UNBOUND_GROUP	UNBOUND_LOG_FACILITY
UNBOUND_USER	UNLIMIT_RESOURCES
UNPRIVILEGED	UNPRIVILEGED_GROUP
UNPRIVILEGED_GROUPS	UNPRIVILEGED_USER
UNWRAP_FILES	UNWRAP_PATTERNS
UPDATE_GEMSPEC	UPDATE_TARGET
URI	USERGROUP_PHASE
USERPPP_GROUP	USER_SPECIFIC_PKGS
USE_ABI_DEPENDS	USE_ADA_FEATURES
USE_APR	USE_BSD_MAKEFILE
USE_BUILTIN	USE_CC_FEATURES
USE_CROSS_COMPILE	USE_CURSES
USE_CWRAPPERS	USE_CXX_FEATURES
USE_DB185	USE_FEATURES
USE_GAMESGROUP	USE_GCC_RUNTIME

USE_IMAKE	USE_INDIRECT_DEPENDS
USE_JAVA	USE_JAVA2
USE_LANGUAGES	USE_LIBTOOL
USE_NATIVE_GCC	USE_NETBSD_REPO
USE_PKGSRG_GCC	USE_PKGSRG_GCC_RUNTIME
USE_PKGTASKS	USE_PKG_ADMIN_DIGEST
USE_RUBY_EXTCONF	USE_RUBY_INSTALL
USE_RUBY_SETUP	USE_RUBY_SETUP_PKG
USE_TMPFILES	USE_TOOLS
UUCP_GROUP	UUCP_USER
VARBASE	VARNAME
VIM_EXTRA_OPTS	WARNING_MSG
WCALC_CGIDIR	WCALC_CGIPATH
WCALC_HTMLDIR	WCALC_HTMLPATH
WDM_MANAGERS	WRAPPER_CC
WRAPPER_REORDER_CMDS	WRKDIR
WRKDIR_BASENAME	WRKDIR_LOCKTYPE
WRKLOG	WRKOBJDIR
WRKSRG	X10_PORT
X11	X11BASE
X11_PKGSRCDIR	X11_TYPE
X509_CERTIFICATE	X509_KEY
XAW_TYPE	XLOCK_DEFAULT_MODE
XMKMF	XMKMF_FLAGS
XXX	XXXX
YES	ZSH_STATIC
__stdc__	_vargroups
accept	acquire-localbase-lock
acquire-lock	add
added	administrator
alloca	alternatives
aslr	asprintf
atlas	autoconf
automake	autoreconf
awk	barrier
bash	big-endian
bin-install	bind
binpkg-list	blas
bootstrap-dependends	broken
broken_on_platform	bsd
bsd.prog.mk	build
build-env	buildlink-directories
buildlink-oss-soundcard-h	built-in
builtin	c
c++	ccache
cce	cdefs
ceil	changes
changes-entry	changes-entry-noupdate
check	check-clean
check-files	check-files-clean
check-hackage	check-vulnerable
checksum	checksum-phase
clean	clean-dependends
cleandir	commit
commit-changes-entry	compact
compiler	conf
config.guess	config.sub
configuration	configure
configure-env	configure-help
configure_args	connect
cos	cpe

cputime	create-usergroup
csch	ctf
cvs	debug
debug-barrier	declaration
declare	defined
depend	dependencies
depends	depends-checksum
depends-fetch	deps
describe	destdir
disable	distclean
distfiles	distinfo
dl	dlopen
do-buildlink	do-clean
do-configure	do-configure-post-hook
do-extract	do-fetch
do-install	download
emul	emul-distinfo
emul-fetch	emulation
emulator	enable
endian	endif
enomem	ensurepip
err	errx
etc	exp
extract-rpm	fabs
feature	features
fetch	fetch-list
follows	forbids
form	format
fortify	fortify_source
fossil	friend
fts	fts_close
fts_open	fts_read
fts_set	gcc
gethostbyaddr	gethostbyname
gethostbyname2	getopt_long
getprogname	getservbyname
getservbyport	getservent
gettext	git
github	gitlab
glob	gnu
gnu_configure_strict	go
go-deps	golang
guess-license	hashbang
heimdal	help
hg	imake
in-tree	increment
indirect	inet_aton
install	install-env
interp	interpreter
intl	ip4
ip6	ipv4
ipv6	iso
kerberos	krb
krb5	ksh
lapack	latex
libiconv	libintl_bindtextdomain
libintl_gettext	libintl_textdomain
libnbcompat	libs
libtool	licence
license	lintl

little-endian	lock
locking	lua
lvalue	machine_endian
make	makedistinfo
makepatchsum	makesum
mdi	memory
mercurial	meta
meta-package	meta_package
mit-krb5	mk.conf
mkl	mount
move	moved
mprotect	mps
mremap	native
nb	nbcompat
netlib	network
node	node.js
nodejs	obstack
obstack_ptr_grow	occurs
only	openblas
options	options.mk
order	override
override-intltool	override-message-intltool
package	parallel
path	pax
paxctl	pbulk-index
pc	perl
perl5	perms
php	pkg-build-options
pkg-config	pkg_build_options
pkgsrc	platform
plist	post-extract
post-fetch	post-wrapper
pre-build-checks-hook	pre-configure-checks-hook
pre-extract	pre-fetch
print-go-deps	print-plist
print-summary-data	privileged-install-hook
pypi	python
r	readme-all
recursive	recv
recvfrom	regcomp
release-localbase-lock	release-lock
relro	remove
removed	rename
renamed	reorder
replace	replace_interpreter
reproducible	resolv
root	ruby
send	sendfile
sendto	setenv
setgid	setprogrname
setuid	sh
shebang	show
show-all	show-build-defs
show-depends	show-depends-dirs
show-depends-pkgpaths	show-depends-recursive
show-deps	show-distfiles
show-downlevel	show-subdir-var
show-tools	show-var
show-vars	snprintf

socket	ssp
st_mode	stage-install
strcasestr	strict
strip	strndup
strlen	strsep
subst	substitutions
subversion	sun
sunpro	sunwspro
svn	symlink
test	test-env
tex	texlive
tmp	todo
tool	tools
tools-libtool-m4-override	transitive
type	ulimit
undefined	undo-replace
unlimit	unprivileged
unprivileged-install-hook	unstripped
update	updated
upload	upload-distfiles
use_tools	user
utimes	vasprintf
verbose	vsprintf
warn	warning
warnings	warnx
wattr_off	wattr_on
work	wrapper
wrkdir	

## Appendix F.

# *Editing guidelines for the pkgsrc guide*

---

This section contains information on editing the pkgsrc guide itself.

### F.1. Make targets

The pkgsrc guide's source code is stored in `pkgsrc/doc/guide/files`, and several files are created from it:

- `pkgsrc/doc/pkgsrc.txt`
- `pkgsrc/doc/pkgsrc.html`
- <https://www.NetBSD.org/docs/pkgsrc/>
- <https://www.NetBSD.org/docs/pkgsrc/pkgsrc.pdf>: The PDF version of the pkgsrc guide.
- <https://www.NetBSD.org/docs/pkgsrc/pkgsrc.ps>: PostScript version of the pkgsrc guide.

### F.2. Procedure

The procedure to edit the pkgsrc guide is:

1. Make sure you have checked out the htdocs repository into a sibling directory of your pkgsrc directory. You will need the ability to commit from both pkgsrc and htdocs.
2. Make sure you have the packages needed to regenerate the pkgsrc guide (and other XML-based NetBSD documentation) installed. These are automatically installed when you install the `meta-pkgs/pkgsrc-guide-tools` package.
3. Run `cd doc/guide` to get to the right directory. All further steps will take place here.
4. Edit the XML file(s) in `files/`.
5. Run `bmake` to check the pkgsrc guide for valid XML and to build the final output files. If you get any errors at this stage, you can just edit the files, as there are only symbolic links in the working directory, pointing to the files in `files/`.
6. (`cd files && cvs commit`)
7. Run `bmake clean && bmake` to regenerate the output files with the proper RCS Ids.
8. Run `bmake regen` to install and commit the files in both `pkgsrc/doc` and `htdocs`.

**Note:** If you have added, removed or renamed some chapters, you need to synchronize them using **cv**s **add** or **cv**s **delete** in the htdocs directory.